

Terminal BASIC

Terminal BASIC

HEWLETT  PACKARD

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY
19400 HOMESTEAD ROAD, CUPERTINO, CALIFORNIA, 95014

NOTICE

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

HEWLETT-PACKARD MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance or use of this material.

Hewlett-Packard assumes no responsibility for the use or reliability of its software on equipment that is not furnished by Hewlett-Packard.

This document contains proprietary information which is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced or translated to another program language without the prior written consent of Hewlett-Packard Company.

PREFACE

This manual provides detailed programming information for Intelligent Terminal BASIC. It is written to provide the information needed to use the BASIC interpreter to develop application programs to run on the terminal.

This manual assumes that you are familiar with the use of the terminal. Operating and programming information for the terminal is given in the HP 2647 User's Manual (02647-90001) and the HP 2647 Reference Manual (02647-90002).

If you are not familiar with programming or the BASIC language, you should refer to a tutorial manual explaining the BASIC language and the elements of programming. Manuals explaining BASIC are available in most book stores. Note that the version of BASIC used with the terminal is slightly different than that described in most tutorial manuals.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This manual describes the BASIC interpreter used in Hewlett-Packard Intelligent Terminals. The various functional statement groups such as strings, arrays, and files are described in separate sections. If you are already familiar with the BASIC programming language, you can refer to Section 12 which contains the detailed syntax of the various BASIC commands and statements. Section 10 contains many unique statements that allow you to directly access or modify the terminal operating system.

This manual is made up of the following sections and appendices:

Section I. Introduction – This section provides a brief overview of the BASIC interpreter and describes how it is loaded and accessed.

Section II. Data – this section describes the various data structures and formats used by the BASIC interpreter.

Section III. Operators, Functions, and Expressions – This section describes the arithmetic and string operators as well as the various functions available in the interpreter.

Section IV. Statements – This section provides a brief tutorial description of some of the BASIC statements.
Section V. Formatted Output – This section describes how to produce specially formatted output from your BASIC program.

Section VI. Arrays – This section describes how to access and modify array data.

Section VII. Strings – This section describes how to access and modify string or textual data.

Section VIII. Subprograms – This section describes how to write subprograms.

Section IX. Files – This section describes how to store and access data stored in terminal device files such as cartridge tape.

Section X. Terminal Operations – This section describes the special statements and functions that allow you to access the terminal's operating system from your BASIC program.

Section XI. A Graphics Language (AGL) – This section describes a special set of statements that allow you to perform graphics output to the terminal display or a graphics peripheral.

Section XII. BASIC Syntax – This section provides the detailed syntax for the BASIC commands and statements.

Appendix A. ASCII Character Set – This appendix lists the characters available in the ASCII character set together with their numeric code values.

Appendix B. Compatibility – This appendix describes the differences between Terminal BASIC and other BASIC languages.

Appendix C. Reserved Words – This appendix lists letter groups that cannot be used as variable names.

Appendix D. Summary of BASIC – This appendix lists the commands and statements available in the interpreter.

Appendix E. Error Messages – this appendix lists all of the error messages generated by the terminal together with a description of the error.

TERMS AND CONVENTIONS

The descriptions in this manual use the following conventions:

[] – The right and left bracket are used to enclose a parameter that is optional. The brackets themselves should not be entered.

Example: The RUN command is shown as RUN [line number]. This means that a line number is optional. To RUN a program at line 100, enter RUN 100.

< > – The less than and greater than signs are used to set off parameters. The less than and greater than signs themselves should not be entered.

Example: The SET command is shown as SET <condition>. This means that one of the <condition> parameters, SHORT, LONG, etc. should be used. To set the default data type to LONG, enter SET LONG.

Control Characters are indicated in three ways. They may be shown as a character with a superscript “C” (A^C), the word control followed by a letter (CONTROL-A), or as a two letter graphic symbol (ϵ_C). The graphic symbols are listed in Appendix A.

CONTENTS

Section 1	Page	Section 4	Page
INTRODUCTION			
What is BASIC for Terminals?	1-1	REM Statement	4-1
How Do You Use BASIC?	1-1	LET Statement	4-1
Commands and Statements	1-2	Multiple Assignment	4-2
Workspace	1-3	Relational Tests for Equality	4-2
Programs	1-4	INPUT Statement	4-3
Entering Programs	1-5	LINPUT Statement	4-4
Multiple Statements	1-5	READ and DATA Statements	4-4
Loading Programs Using the READ Key	1-6	Interaction Between READ and DATA Statements	4-4
Editing Programs	1-7	RESTORE Statement	4-5
Running Programs	1-7	PRINT Statement	4-6
Saving Programs	1-7	Print Functions	4-8
Using an Execute File	1-7	GO TO and ON...GO TO Statements	4-9
Remote Operation	1-8	IF...THEN...ELSE Statement	4-9
Sample Program Session	1-8	FOR and NEXT Statements	4-10
Exiting BASIC	1-9	Multiple Loops	4-11
Direct Computation	1-9	For Loop Cautions	4-12
Partial List Of BASIC Commands and Statements	1-10	GOSUB and RETURN Statements	4-13
Is That All There Is?	1-11	ON...GOSUB Statement	4-14
Section 2	Page	In-Line Subroutine Nesting	4-14
DATA			
Constants	2-1	STOP and END	4-15
Numeric Data	2-2	Section 5	Page
INTEGERS	2-2	FORMATTED OUTPUT	
SHORT	2-2	PRINT USING and IMAGE Statements	5-1
LONG	2-2	Format Symbols	5-2
E-notation	2-3	Separators	5-2
Octal and Hexadecimal Data	2-3	Literal Specifications	5-2
String Data	2-3	Formatting Strings	5-3
Variables	2-3	Formatting Numbers	5-3
Numeric Variables	2-4	Digit Symbols	5-3
Type Declaration Statements	2-4	Digit Separators	5-3
String Variables	2-5	Radix Symbols	5-3
DIM Statement	2-5	Sign Symbols	5-4
Arrays and Subscripted Variables	2-6	Floating Specifiers	5-4
Files	2-6	Format Replication	5-4
Section 3	Page	Compressed Formatting	5-4
OPERATOR, FUNCTIONS, AND EXPRESSIONS			
Operators	3-1	Carriage Control	5-5
Arithmetic Operators	3-1	Reusing the Format String	5-5
String Operators	3-2	Field Overflow	5-5
Relational Operators	3-2	Programming Considerations	5-5
Logical Operators	3-3		
Functions	3-4		
Numeric Functions	3-4		
Random Numbers	3-5		
String Functions	3-5		

Section 6	Page	Disabling All Key Interrupts	10-5
ARRAYS		Disabling Interrupt Keys	10-5
Dimensioning Arrays	6-1	Interrupting on Specific Keys	10-5
DIM Statement	6-1	Directly Acting on Keyboard Input	10-5
Type Declaration Statements	6-2	Processing Key Functions	10-6
Using Arrays	6-2	Redefining the Keyboard	10-7
Entering Data Into an Array	6-2	Data Communications	10-9
Printing Array Data	6-3	Enabling Data Communications Functions	10-9
Substrings as Array Elements	6-4	Single Byte Transfers	10-9
Array Functions	6-4	Program Control	10-11
Setting an Array to Zero or Other Constant	6-4	Terminal and Resource Functions	10-11
Setting an Array to an Identity Array	6-4	Memory Space Available	10-11
Transposing Arrays	6-4	Error Handling	10-11
Inverting an Array	6-4	Suspending BASIC	10-13
Section 7	Page	Section 11	Page
STRINGS		A GRAPHICS LANGUAGE (AGL)	
Substrings	7-1	Introduction	11-1
Section 8	Page	What Is "A Graphics Language"?	11-1
SUBPROGRAMS		AGL Terminology	11-2
SUB and SUBEND statements	8-1	Regions	11-2
Pass-by-reference/Pass-by-value	8-3	Clipping	11-4
Local Variables	8-4	Effect of AGL Commands on Regions	11-5
Referencing Files	8-6	Units	11-5
Section 9	Page	Other Terms	11-6
FILES		Function Groups	11-7
ASSIGN Statement	9-1	Function Syntax	11-7
PRINT # Statement	9-1	Set-Up Functions	11-8
READ # Statement	9-2	PLOTR	11-8
LINPUT # Statement	9-2	GPON	11-8
RESTORE # Statement	9-2	SETAR	11-9
ON END # Statement	9-2	LIMIT	11-9
Closing a File	9-3	GCLR	11-10
File Error Variables	9-3	LOCATE	11-10
Output to Terminals and Printers	9-3	MARGIN	11-11
Formatted Output to Devices	9-3	SCALE	11-12
Section 10	Page	SHOW	11-12
TERMINAL OPERATIONS		MSCALE	11-13
Display Operations	10-1	CLIP	11-13
Cursor Sensing	10-1	CLIPOFF/ON	11-13
Absolute Sensing	10-2	SETGU/SETUU	11-13
Screen Relative Sensing	10-2	Axis and Labeling Functions	11-14
Cursor Positioning	10-2	XAXIS	11-14
Absolute Cursor Positioning	10-2	YAXIS	11-15
Relative Cursor Positioning	10-2	LXAXIS	11-15
Screen Relative Cursor Positioning	10-2	LYAXIS	11-16
Direct Display Input	10-2	AXES	11-16
Keyboard Input and Control	10-4	LAXES	11-17
		GRID	11-18
		LGRID	11-18
		FRAME	11-18
		FXD	11-19
		LORG	11-19
		LDIR	11-20
		CSIZE	11-20
		Plotting Functions	11-21
		PENUP/PENDN	11-21
		PEN	11-21
		LINE	11-22
		PLOT	11-22

MOVE	11-23	ON...GOTO	12-11
DRAW	11-23	ON ERROR	12-12
RPLOT	11-23	ON KEY#	12-12
IPILOT	11-23	PRINT	12-12
PRINT #0	11-23	PRINT#	12-13
PDIR	11-24	PRINT USING	12-13
PORG	11-24	READ	12-14
Interactive Functions	11-24	READ#	12-14
WHERE	11-24	REMARK	12-14
POINT	11-24	RESTORE	12-14
CURSOR	11-24	RESTORE#	12-14
DIGITIZE	11-25	RESUME	12-14
GPMM	11-26	RETURN	12-15
DSIZE	11-26	SHORT	12-15
DSTAT	11-26	SLEEP	12-15
GSTAT	11-26	STOP	12-15
Section 12	Page	SUB	12-16
BASIC SYNTAX		SUBEND	12-16
Commands	12-1	WAKEUP	12-16
AUTO	12-1	FUNCTIONS	12-16
CSAVE	12-1		
DELETE	12-1		
EXIT	12-1		
GET	12-2		
GO	12-2		
LIST	12-2		
MERGE	12-2		
REMOVE	12-3		
RENUM	12-3		
RUN	12-4		
SAVE	12-4		
SCRATCH	12-4		
SET	12-4		
Statements	12-5		
ASSIGN	12-5		
CALL	12-6		
COMMAND	12-6		
DATA	12-6		
DIM	12-6		
END	12-6		
ERROR	12-7		
FOR...NEXT	12-7		
GETDCM ON/OFF	12-7		
GETKBD ON/OFF	12-7		
GOSUB	12-7		
GOTO	12-8		
IF...THEN...ELSE	12-8		
IMAGE	12-8		
INPUT	12-8		
INTEGER	12-8		
KEYCDE	12-8		
LET	12-10		
LINPUT	12-10		
LINPUT#	12-10		
LONG	12-10		
NEXT	12-11		
OFF KEY#	12-11		
ON END #	12-11		
ON...GOSUB	12-11		

Appendix A

ASCII CHARACTER SET

Appendix B

COMPATIBILITY

Appendix C

RESERVED WORDS

Appendix D

SUMMARY OF BASIC

Appendix E

ERROR MESSAGES

Index

INTRODUCTION

This section provides an overview of BASIC programming on the terminal. It briefly describes selected commands and statements used in elementary BASIC programming. Sample programming sessions will show you how to create, edit, run, and save BASIC programs. Specialized topics such as arrays, strings, files, formatted output, and graphics are discussed as separate topics in other sections. Section XII contains detailed descriptions of each of the BASIC commands and statements.

What Is BASIC For Terminals?

BASIC for Terminals is a powerful version of the BASIC programming language. It allows you to write and execute application programs on your terminal. These programs can interact with programs on a host computer or run independently with the terminal offline.

Terminal BASIC contains most of the standard BASIC statements together with special statements that allow you to monitor and control terminal operation. In addition, a complete set of AGL (A Graphics Language) statements are included. These statements provide a high level language for controlling the terminal's graphic functions. AGL statements are used in the same way as normal BASIC statements.

BASIC program statements present in the terminal's memory are executed by a BASIC interpreter. This interpreter allows your program to interact with the terminal's input/output file system. The file system gives your program access to printers, plotters, and other devices connected to the terminal. This is in addition to the terminal's own keyboard, display, cartridge tapes, and data communications capabilities (see figure 1-1).

How Do You Use BASIC?

To use BASIC the interpreter must be present (loaded) in the terminal. Normally it will not be necessary to reload the interpreter unless the terminal has been turned off. (The interpreter is lost when the terminal is turned off.)

The normal procedure for using BASIC is to request the BASIC interpreter using the COMMAND channel, type in a program from the keyboard or read a program from a cartridge tape, and then run the program.

Start the terminal by setting the power switch to ON. After about 20 seconds the display will appear as shown below:

TERMINAL READY

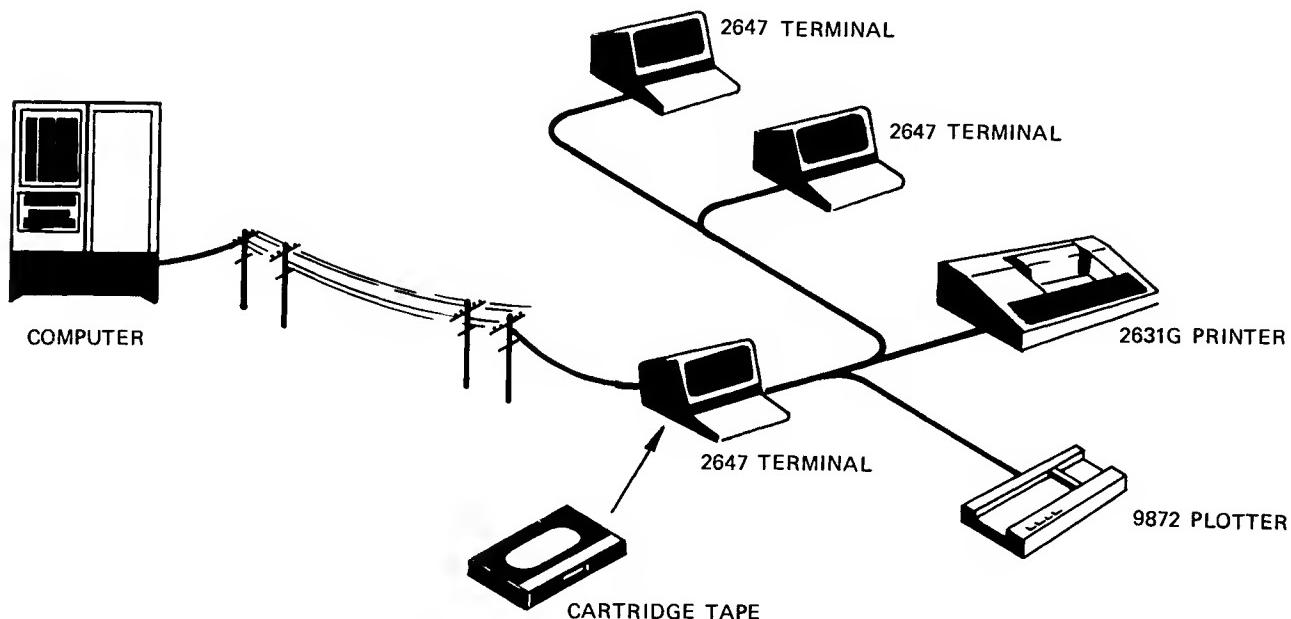


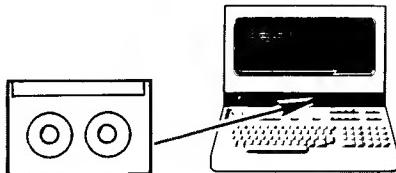
Figure 1-1. Terminal Network Capabilities

Before you can enter a BASIC program, the BASIC interpreter must be present in memory. If the BASIC interpreter is already loaded you can start it by pressing the COMMAND key and entering BASIC **RETURN**. The terminal will display the available workspace and the BASIC prompt character (">"). If the terminal responds with the message:

PROGRAM NOT FOUND or CHECKSUM ERROR IN BASIC

The BASIC interpreter is not present and must be loaded. (The error message can be cleared by pressing the **RETURN** key.) The procedure for loading the BASIC interpreter is as follows:

Step 1. Place the Terminal BASIC/MULTIPILOT tape in the left tape drive.



Step 2. Make sure that the REMOTE key is in the "up" position. (The terminal must be set for local operation.)

Step 3. Press the READ key. This will cause the following display to appear on the screen:



Figure 1-2. How To Load BASIC

Step 4. Press the F8 key. The BASIC interpreter will be loaded.

Note: If you want to use one of the Multiplot programs, press the appropriate key (F1-F6). Refer to the terminal User's Manual for instructions for running Multiplot.

Once loaded, the interpreter will begin immediately by displaying the amount of workspace available for your program, followed by the BASIC prompt character ">".

TERMINAL READY

HP TERMINAL BASIC _ REV. B-1901-42

7967 BYTES DISPLAY MEMORY

9798 BYTES WORK SPACE

> -

You can now begin entering your BASIC program. Pressing F7 will clear the display. If you want to return to normal terminal operation, enter "EXIT **RETURN**". Note that if the terminal is subsequently turned off, BASIC must be reloaded using steps 1 through 4.

Once you are in the BASIC interpreter you can use a wide selection of commands and editing features to aid you in program preparation.

Commands and Statements

The BASIC Interpreter accepts commands and statements. BASIC commands instruct the interpreter to perform some action on your program or modify the workspace or interpreter operation. Commands differ from BASIC statements in both purpose and form. A command causes the interpreter to perform some action immediately. A statement is an instruction to perform a particular function only when the program containing it is run. A statement must always have a line number while a command does not. Commands can be entered at any time except when the current program is executing. Commands are either executed immediately or rejected with an appropriate error message. Additional information on statements is given under "Programming".

Each command is a single word. Some commands also have optional or required parameters following them. If parameters are used, they are separated from the command by a space. Multiple parameters are separated from each other by commas, slashes (" / ") or hyphens (" - "). Command entry is terminated by pressing the **RETURN** key. If the command is misspelled or otherwise unrecognized, the interpreter will respond with the message "SYNTAX ERROR".

Many of the commands will not produce a response on the display. Their completion is indicated by the prompt (">") character. Others display one or more lines of information. In these cases you can stop command operation with the Break character (normally Control-A). The appearance of the ">" prompt indicates that the interpreter is ready to accept another command or statement.

The following paragraphs describe some of the commands used to manipulate programs in the BASIC workspace. Section 12 contains a full description of all BASIC commands.

Work Space

The interpreter has a workspace of about 10,000 bytes. (A byte is one character.) Whenever you load the BASIC interpreter, this space is cleared. During program preparation, you enter program statements into this workspace. The workspace holds your program and all of the variables used in your program. If your program uses no variables, there is room for about 1500 lines of program. If your program uses many variables, there may be room for only a few program statements. For example, one of the largest arrays that can be held in the normal workspace is A(100,33). This is 100 x 33 or 3300 variables, normally about 13,200 bytes. Note that there are many combinations of arrays and variables that can be used to fill the workspace. Example:

```
10 DIM A(100,33) or 10 DIM A(100), B(200), C(3000)
20 PRINT "HI"
```

Attempting to run the above program with 10 DIM A(100,34) will result in an "OUT OF MEMORY" message. If you require additional program or variable storage you can adjust the size of the workspace using the SET SIZE command (refer to Section 12).

You can control the workspace in a variety of ways. You can change, display, save, delete, or renumber program statements. You can even change the values of variables using direct computation. To illustrate these capabilities, enter the following statements:

```
10 REM...FIND THE PRODUCT
20 PRINT "ENTER TWO NUMBERS"
30 INPUT B,C
40 LET A=B*C
50 PRINT A
60 END
```

This is a complete program. You can run the program as soon as it is entered, modify the program, or list it on the display. To change line 20, simply re-enter the line:

```
20 PRINT "ENTER TWO NUMBERS SEPARATED BY A COMMA"
```

To list the changed program, enter the LIST command:

```
LIST [RETURN]
10 REM...FIND THE PRODUCT
20 PRINT "ENTER TWO NUMBERS SEPARATED BY A COMMA"
30 INPUT B,C
40 LET A=B*C
50 PRINT A
60 END
```

Note that when you enter program statements, spaces are not required except within quoted text. You can omit spaces from the BASIC statements or put in more than one space. When the program is listed, the interpreter shifts all BASIC statements to upper case (only the first letter in variable names) and uses a standard spacing between terms. Also if you have entered statements out of order, the interpreter will always list them in numeric order.

To add lines, you can insert them by using line numbers between those already used. For example, to insert a statement between lines 50 and 60:

```
55 IF A>0 THEN 70
```

At least one statement must now be added at line 70:

```
70 LET X=A/2
71 PRINT "A DIVIDED BY 2 IS";X
72 END
```

The RENUM command allows you to renumber lines in the workspace. When no parameters are used, this command renames each line starting at 10 and incrementing each line by 10. It will automatically adjust any line number references used in program statements to the new line numbers. Renumber and list the edited program. Note that the line entered as 55 is now line 60 and references line 80.

```
>RENUM [RETURN]
LIST [RETURN]
10 REM...FIND THE PRODUCT
20 PRINT "ENTER TWO NUMBERS SEPARATED BY A COMMA"
30 INPUT B,C
40 LET A=B*C
50 PRINT A
60 IF A>0 THEN 80
70 END
80 LET X=A/2
90 PRINT "A DIVIDED BY 2 IS";X
100 END
```

You can renumber lines starting at a line number other than 10 and using any increment you want. For example, to start with line number 1 and increment by 5, enter:

```
RENUM 1,5 [RETURN]
LIST [RETURN]
1 REM...FIND THE PRODUCT
6 PRINT "ENTER TWO NUMBERS SEPARATED BY A COMMA"
11 INPUT B,C
16 LET A=B*C
21 PRINT A
26 IF A>0 THEN 36
31 END
36 LET X=A/2
41 PRINT "A DIVIDED BY 2 IS";X
46 END
```

You can also renumber only a portion of your program. Refer to Section 13 for additional RENUM parameters that provide this feature.

You can delete any line from your program by entering the line number and a RETURN. If you want to delete a group of lines, you can use the DELETE command. For example, to delete lines 26 through 41, enter:

```
DELETE 26-41 [RETURN]
```

If the last line number to be deleted is also the last line in the program, you need only enter the starting line number to be deleted, followed by a dash. The DELETE command will then delete all lines from the starting line specified to the end of the program. If you now renumber your program and list it, you will be back to the version of the program that you originally entered.

```
RENUM [RETURN]
LIST [RETURN]
10 REM...FIND THE PRODUCT
20 PRINT "ENTER TWO NUMBERS SEPARATED BY A COMMA"
30 INPUT B,C
40 LET A=B*C
50 PRINT A
60 END
```

So far the LIST command has been used to list the entire program. It can also be used to list selected portions of the program by specifying the first and last lines to be listed. If only one number is entered following the LIST command, only that single line will be listed.

Example: List lines 30 through 50.

```
LIST 30-50 RETURN
```

```
30 INPUT B,C  
40 LET A=B*C  
50 PRINT A
```

Example: List only line 30.

```
LIST 30 RETURN
```

```
30 INPUT B,C
```

At any time when you are preparing a program, you can run it to check for problems. This is done by entering the RUN command. Your program will begin executing with the first line number.

```
RUN RETURN
```

```
ENTER TWO NUMBERS SEPARATED BY A COMMA  
?375,4 RETURN  
1500
```

An executed program will remain in the work space and can be run again as desired until it is either removed using the DELETE or SCRATCH commands or until a new program is loaded. The program will be lost if the terminal is turned off or if BASIC is reloaded.

You can save a program on a cartridge tape using the SAVE command. The SAVE command writes a copy of the program in the work space onto a specified cartridge tape. The program can then be reloaded from the cartridge tape at a later time using the GET command.

The GET command reads a program from a specified cartridge tape and enters it into the workspace. The GET command clears any program that is in the workspace before entering the new program from tape. Procedures for saving and loading programs are described elsewhere in this section.

The MERGE command can be used to combine two programs. The first program is loaded into the workspace. The second program is then loaded from tape using the MERGE command. The second program is added to the lines already in the workspace just as if it was entered from the keyboard. Note that if any of the line numbers in the program on tape are the same as those in the workspace, the line on tape will replace the one in the workspace.

The MERGE command is useful for incorporating standard subroutines into a program being developed in the workspace. The RENUM command can be used to adjust line numbers so that the program segments can be easily merged.

The SCRATCH command is used to clear the workspace. You can enter SCR or SCRATCH. You should use the SCRATCH command to delete programs from the workspace before entering a new program from the keyboard. If you do not, a few lines from the earlier program may remain and cause program errors.

Programs

Programs control the operations that you want performed. They can perform arithmetic functions, manipulate text data, or control devices.

A BASIC program is a sequence of BASIC language statements. The lines containing statements are numbered to indicate the order in which the statements are to be executed. Line numbers also allow one statement to reference another. The following BASIC statements make up a simple program that calculates a salary given the hours worked and an hourly wage. The program stops when the number of hours given is 0.

```
10 PRINT "WEEKLY PAY CALCULATOR"  
20 INPUT Hours,Wage  
30 IF Hours = 0 THEN STOP  
40 LET Pay = Hours * Wage  
50 PRINT Hours;"hours at $";Wage;"per hour = $";Pay  
60 GOTO 20
```

When this program is executed, it prompts you for values for the Hours and the Wage by displaying a question mark ("?") on the screen. If you enter 40 for the Hours and 3.00 for the Wage, the output is:

```
40 hours at $ 3 per hour = $120
```

The lines can be entered in any order. A good practice is to number them by tens so that in the future additional lines can be inserted easily. The computer puts the lines in numerical order no matter how they are entered. For example, if lines are entered in the sequence 10,40,30,50,20; the BASIC Interpreter arranges them in the order 10,20,30,40,50. Line numbers can range from 1 through 9999.

Entering Programs

Once BASIC is loaded and enabled you can do one of the following:

- Enter a program from the keyboard.
- Enter a program from tape or remote computer.
- Return to normal terminal operation.

Entering Programs From The Keyboard

The terminal should be set for local operation (REMOTE key up) during program generation. Otherwise keyboard input will be sent to the host computer as well as the interpreter.

BASIC does not process input until the **RETURN** key is pressed. This allows you to edit the line before sending it to the interpreter. When the **RETURN** key is pressed, the line containing the cursor is read by the interpreter. If the BASIC statement is entered without a line number it will be executed immediately. (Refer to Direct Computation.) If the statement has a line number it will be stored in memory.

When data is input to a program from the keyboard, BASIC does not process the data until the **RETURN** key is pressed. When the **RETURN** key is pressed, the display line that contains the cursor is processed. You are free to edit the data in any way you wish before pressing the **RETURN** key. This means that if you enter data and then move the cursor to another line before pressing the **RETURN** key, the wrong data will be entered. Refer to the descriptions of the INPUT and LINPUT statements for additional information on keyboard input.

Line numbers can be automatically generated using the AUTO command. You may change a line number by moving the cursor to the line number and typing over the number. Remember that this does not delete the original line.

Example: Write a program that adds up the cost of items purchased and calculates a 6% sales tax on the total.

Step 1. If you are not already in the BASIC interpreter, call it as described under Loading and Using BASIC.

Step 2. Enter the following program from the keyboard.

```
10 REM Add up the cost of items sold
20 REM and then compute sales tax
30 INPUT "Enter item cost $",Item
40 Price=Price+Item
50 IF Item>0 THEN 30
60 TAX=INT(6*Price)/100
70 PRINT LIN(1);"Cost $" ;Price
80 PRINT "Tax $" ;Tax
90 PRINT LIN(1);"Total $" ;Price+Tax
```

Step 3. Type "RUN **RETURN**".

The program will output a message. Enter the values:

95.96	RETURN
33.00	RETURN
17.95	RETURN
0	RETURN

You should see the following display:

```
>run RETURN
Enter item cost $95.96
Enter item cost $33.00
Enter item cost $17.95
Enter item cost $0
Cost = $ 146.91
Tax = $ 8.81
Total = $ 155.72
>-
```

Step 4. Type "RUN **RETURN**" again and enter your own values. Enter a "0" to total your entries and end the program. (Note that this simple program will not print trailing zeros after the decimal point.)

Multiple Statements

You can assign more than one statement for a single line number by separating statements on a line with the backslash ("\"") character.

Example:

```
10 DIM A$(80), B$(80) \
A$="HI" \
B$="BYE" \
PRINT A$;B$
```

Entering Programs from Cartridge Tape

A program stored on a cartridge tape can be entered by placing the tape in the left drive and typing GET **RETURN**. This causes the current file on the tape to be loaded into memory. If your program is not in the first file on the tape, position the tape to the proper file before entering the GET command.

Example: Load a program stored on file 3 of a cartridge tape.

```
COMMAND, F7, F7, 3, F7, RETURN
GET RETURN
```

You can also load programs from the right tape drive. The left tape is selected unless you tell BASIC to read from the right tape drive. Entering GET "RTAPE" would cause the program to be loaded from the right tape drive.

If you select the wrong tape drive you will get a NO TAPE error message if there is no tape in the selected drive. If there is a tape present, whatever is on the tape will be loaded as if it were your program.

Refer to the terminal User's Manual for additional information on locating files and selecting tape drives.

Example: Write a program to compute and plot SIN(X)/X for values of X ranging from 0 to 40. Store and retrieve the program using a cartridge tape.

Step 1. Insert a tape in the right tape slot. Make sure the tab on the tape cartridge is set to the RECORD position.

Step 2. Enter the BASIC interpreter. Type SCR_{RETURN}. This will clear any old programs from the BASIC workspace. Enter the following program statements:

```
>10 REM Plot SIN(X)/X
>20 PLOTR
30 LOCATE (100,180,50,100)
40 SCALE (0,50,-1,1)
50 FXD (2,2)
60 LGRID (5,.2,0,0,2,2)
70 FOR X=.01 to 40 STEP .1
80 PLOT (X,SIN(X)/X)
90 NEXT X
```

Step 3. Record the program on the right tape by entering SAVE "R"_{RETURN}. Press:

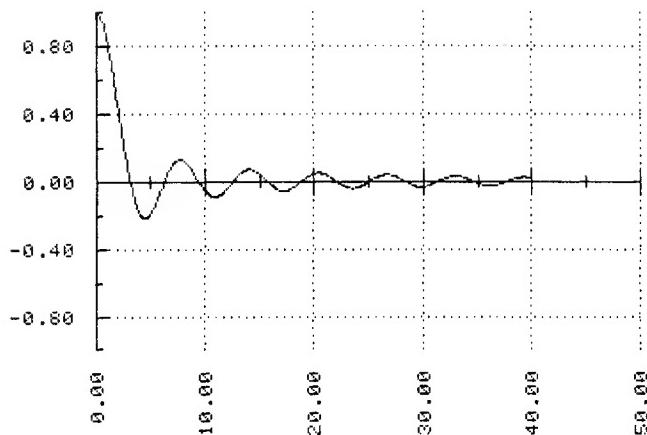
COMMAND, REWIND, RTAPE, _{RETURN}

This will place a file mark on the tape and position it at the beginning of the program. Press the COMMAND key.

Step 4. Type "SCR_{RETURN}" to clear the SIN(X)/X program from the terminal. Type LIST_{RETURN} to show that the program is no longer present.

Step 5. Load the SIN(X)/X program by entering GET "R"_{RETURN}. The program will be read into the workspace.

Step 6. Type "RUN_{RETURN}". The program will execute and give the following display:



Loading Programs Using the READ key

Programs can also be read from a tape to the display using the READ key or COPY command. When this is done the program is not automatically entered as a program. To enter the program you must position the cursor in each line and press _{RETURN}. This will cause the current line to be entered as a program line. This technique is normally used only to make patches to existing programs.

Entering Programs From A Computer

Programs can be transferred from a computer to the terminal's BASIC interpreter either directly or indirectly. To transfer programs directly, simply access the terminal's BASIC interpreter and then have the computer list the program to the terminal. The exact procedure will vary depending on your computer system but it will be similar to the following:

1. Log onto your computer system.
 2. Run the program or utility that is to transfer the program listing. This may be an editor, file transfer program, or a BASIC interpreter.
 3. Enter the command that will cause the transfer or listing to take place, but do not enter the final carriage return or other terminating character. This will keep your command from executing.
 4. Release the REMOTE key. This will return the terminal to LOCAL operation.
 5. Access the terminal's BASIC interpreter. (COMMAND, BASIC _{RETURN}.)
 6. Enter the SCR command to clear the terminal workspace.
 7. Press the REMOTE key down and enter the carriage return or other terminating character to complete your computer command. This will cause your program to be listed to the terminal screen and to be entered into the terminal's BASIC workspace.
- You can then release the REMOTE key (LOCAL operation), and exit terminal BASIC. Once the terminal has been returned to normal operation, again press the REMOTE key and log off of the computer system. Your program is still present in your terminal. You can run the program by accessing terminal BASIC and entering the RUN command.
- Programs can also be loaded indirectly by using a computer editor, utility program, or BASIC interpreter to list the program after placing the terminal in "Data Logging" mode. This will cause the program to be recorded onto a cartridge tape. The tape can then be entered using the procedures explained under "Entering A Program From A Cartridge Tape". Refer to the Terminal User's Manual for an explanation of Data Logging.

Editing Programs

It is very easy to make changes to a program stored in the terminal. You can use any of the normal terminal editing features:

- character delete
- character insert
- character overstrike
- line delete
- line insert
- line replace

To change a statement, simply make the needed modifications to the statement on the display and press the **RETURN** key. The new line will be entered, replacing the old line. (If you wish to retype the entire line you can do this as well.)

Remember that when you press the **RETURN** key the entire line is read. Make sure that the line you enter contains only those characters that you want read. If there are any extra characters displayed in the line, they will be read also and may cause an error.

Example: Using the plot SIN(X)/X program, change the step size to .4.

Step 1. List the program and move the cursor to the line containing statement 70.

Step 2. Move the cursor to the step size (.1). The cursor should be under the "1".

```
>70 FOR X=.01 TO 40 STEP .1
```

Step 3. Overstrike the "1" with a "4". The line should now appear as follows:

```
>70 FOR X=.01 TO 40 STEP .4
```

Step 4. Press the **RETURN** key. This will cause the edited line to be entered, replacing the old statement 70. You can now rerun the program with the new step size by typing **RUN** **RETURN**.

Running Programs

To run a program, enter "RUN" followed by **RETURN**. Syntax and other programming errors are checked at the time a program is run. If an error is detected in your program, a message will be displayed to inform you of the cause of the error. A list of error messages is given in Appendix E.

If the terminal is set for local operation (REMOTE key **b**, **c**, **d**), the BASIC program cannot request input from, or print data to, the datacomm line using the terminal's file system (PRINT #, LINPUT #, etc.).

If the terminal is set for remote operation, the BASIC program can interact with the host computer, requesting input and sending output.

A running BASIC program can be halted by entering the terminal break character (normally CONTROL A). This causes a program break. You can then display and make changes to the values of variables using "direct mode" techniques. You can resume program execution from the point at which the break occurred by entering the GO command.

When a program finishes execution (STOP or END statement), the final values assigned to program variables are available for direct computation. The values for these variables are lost when you enter the next RUN command or modify a program statement.

Saving Programs

After generating or modifying your program, you can save it on a cartridge tape. The SAVE command is used to store a copy of the current BASIC program on the destination device.

Step 1. Insert a cartridge tape in either tape slot. Make sure the tab on the cartridge is in the record position.

Step 2. Assign the tape as the destination device.

```
COMMAND, ASSIGN, D:LTAPE or D:RTAPE, RETURN
```

Step 3. Type "SAVE" followed by **RETURN**. Your program will be stored on the cartridge tape. Since the program is copied from your workspace and not from the display, you do not need to list your program or modify the display before saving your program.

Using An Execute File

You can control the loading and execution of a BASIC program using a terminal Execute File. The Execute File can contain terminal and BASIC commands as well as a BASIC program. (Additional information on Execute Files is given in the terminal User's Manual, part number 02647-90001.) The following is a simple example of an Execute File.

Step 1. Record the following on a tape cartridge in the left tape slot:

```
BASIC
GET "L"
10 COMMAND "SUSPEND COMMAND FILE"
20 INPUT I
30 IF I=0 THEN 60
40 PRINT SQR(I)
50 GOTO 20
60 COMMAND "RESUME COMMAND FILE"
70 END
RUN
EXIT
```

Step 2. Rewind the tape.

Step 3. Press the COMMAND key and enter "EXECUTE L **RETURN**". This will cause the terminal command "BASIC" to be read from the left tape. The commands that follow are then acted on by the BASIC interpreter. The GET "L" command causes BASIC to load the program from the left tape. The RUN command starts program execution. The "SUSPEND" in statement 10 turns off the command file execution while the BASIC program is running. You can now enter any positive number and the program will print the square root of the number.

Step 4. To end the program, enter 0. This causes statement 60 to be executed. Statement 60 turns on the command file and reads the EXIT command from the tape. You then leave BASIC and return to normal terminal operation.

Remote Operation

Refer to the description of the ASSIGN statement for information on remote operation.

Sample Program Session

The following paragraphs will show you how to enter and run BASIC programs. These examples do not cover all of the terminal's programming features, nor do they teach you how to write a BASIC program. You should have read the terminal User's Manual and be familiar with the terminal keyboard.

The remainder of this manual assumes that you have experience with a high level programming language such as BASIC or FORTRAN. If you were able to read and understand the programs listed above, then you will be able to understand the following program. If not, you should probably first read a manual or text intended for beginning BASIC programmers.

Following the examples is a list of some of the BASIC statements and functions. If you are an experienced BASIC programmer and are developing fairly simple programs, this first section may contain all the information that you need. Refer to other sections of this manual for more detailed explanations of all of the BASIC commands, statements, and functions available in the terminal.

Access BASIC and clear the work area with the SCR command.

```
COMMAND, BASIC RETURN
SCR RETURN
```

Enter the "Weekly Pay Calculator" program shown earlier in this section under "Programs". Figure 1-3 shows how the display should appear after the sample program has been entered.

```
HP TERMINAL BASIC -- REV. A-1850-42
7967 BYTES DISPLAY MEMORY
9798 BYTES WORK SPACE
>SCR
10 PRINT "WEEKLY PAY CALCULATOR"
20 INPUT Hours,Wage
30 IF Hours = 0 THEN STOP
40 LET Pay = Hours * Wage
50 PRINT Hours;"hours at $";Wage;"per hour = $";Pay
>60 GOTO 20
```

Figure 1-3. Weekly Pay Calculator Program.

Once you have loaded the sample program, enter "RUN **RETURN**". This will cause the program to be executed. If you have entered the sample "Weekly Pay Calculator" program properly, the screen will appear as shown:

```
>run RETURN
WEEKLY PAY CALCULATOR
?
```

Enter 40 for the number of hours worked and 3.00 for the hourly wage.

```
? 40,3 RETURN
40 hours at $ 3 per hour = $ 120
?
```

Figure 1-4 shows how the screen might look after execution of the sample program. The number of hours entered first was 40 and the hourly wage was 3.00. The second time around use 20 for the number of hours and an hourly wage of 3.25.

```
? 20,3.25 RETURN
20 hours at $ 3.25 per hour = $ 65
?
```

If you enter 0 as the number of hours, the program will stop and control will return to the BASIC interpreter.

```
?0,0 RETURN
>
```

The program that just executed is displayed at the top of the screen. The program dialog is on the next few lines and the BASIC prompt (">") is in the last line.

If your program has run successfully:

- 1) Place a scratch or blank tape in the right tape drive. Make sure that the record tab on the tape is set to the left. 2) Enter SAVE **RETURN**. This will record a copy of your program. 3) Enter COMMAND, REWIND, R TAPE, **RETURN**. This writes a file mark and rewinds the tape.
- 4) Enter COMMAND to close the Command channel and then Enter EXIT **RETURN**. This will end the BASIC Interpreter and return the terminal to normal operation.

This takes you back to figure 1-2. The program is now stored and may be loaded again with the GET command. If you do not want to rerun this program, you can clear the program copy in terminal memory by entering the command SCRATCH while you are in the BASIC Interpreter. If you do not clear the program, it will still be in the workspace the next time you enter BASIC. This may interfere with any new program you might want to run.

Exiting BASIC

To return to normal terminal operation, type “**EXIT** **RETURN**”. Pressing **RESET**, **RESET** (a full reset) will also return the terminal to normal operation.

If a single **RESET** (soft reset) is used, you will enter the command mode of BASIC. If you have entered a BASIC program, it will remain in the BASIC workspace but all program variables will be set to zero.

If you enter a program and then leave BASIC without scratching or deleting the program, it will still be there if you re-enter BASIC at a later time. If you turn the terminal off, your program will be lost along with the BASIC interpreter.

Direct Computation

Terminal BASIC can be used for direct computation without the need for a program. Numeric operations can be performed by entering a “?” followed by a numeric expression. Entering most BASIC expressions or statements without a statement number will cause the operation to be executed as soon as the **ENTER** key is pressed.

Example: Calculate $(2^*(4+2)^3)$.

```
?2*(4+2)^3 RETURN  
432
```

Example: Set X=3, Y=-8*X, and print the absolute value of X*Y.

```
LET X=3 RETURN  
LET Y=-8*X RETURN  
PRINT ABS(X*Y) RETURN  
72
```

The following statements cannot be used in direct computation:

CALL	IMAGE	RESUME
DATA	ON	RETURN
FOR	NEXT	SUB
GOSUB	READ	SUBEND
GOTO	RESTORE	WAKEUP

Note that when variables are assigned values using the **LET** statement, the values are not displayed. Only a **PRINT** statement or expression evaluation causes the output to be displayed. Statements or expressions entered without line numbers are not stored. Values assigned to variables are lost if a program is subsequently run or if BASIC is exited.

You can pass direct computation values to your program by using the **GO** command to resume execution of a program that has been interrupted by the break character or a **STOP** statement.

This allows you to run a program, interrupt the program, print out program variable values, change the values of the variables, and then resume program execution with the new variable values.

You cannot assign a value to a variable using direct computation and pass it to a program run afterward (using the **RUN** command).

Partial List of BASIC Statements

Table 1-1 contains a list of some of the BASIC statements and functions.

Table 1-1. Summary of Elementary BASIC Statements and Functions.

DATA	Stores data to be read by READ statements.	10 DATA 5,-1.004,7E55,``Mary''
DIM	Specifies length of strings and dimensions of arrays.	10 DIM A\$(25), N(10,2)
END	Terminates execution of a program.	10 END
FOR...NEXT	Allows repetition of the group of statements between FOR and NEXT.	10 FOR I = 1 TO 5 . . . 100 NEXT I
GOSUB	Transfers to the subroutine specified by the line number.	10 GOSUB 300
GOTO	Transfers to the specified statement label.	10 GOTO 90
IF...THEN...ELSE	Evaluates a conditional expression and specifies the action(s) to be taken if the condition is true. Optionally you can specify the action(s) to be taken if the condition is false.	10 IF A = B THEN PRINT ``DONE''
IMAGE	Provides format specification for PRINT USING statements.	10 IMAGE ``JANUARY''//X(3A), ``\$''DD.DD
INPUT	Requests data input from the keyboard.	10 INPUT X,Y\$,Z
LET	Assigns a value to a variable.	10 LET X = 9999
LINPUT	Requests a line of input from the keyboard and assigns it to a string variable.	10 LINPUT A\$
ON...GOSUB	Multiple branch to subroutines.	10 ON X + N GOSUB 3000,4000,5000
ON...GOTO	Multiple branch to statements.	10 ON X + N GOTO 300,350
PRINT	Prints output to the terminal screen.	10 PRINT X,Y\$,Z
PRINT USING	Prints output to the terminal screen using a specified format.	10 PRINT USING ``3A,3X,3A'';A\$,B\$
READ	Reads data from DATA statements.	10 READ X,Y\$,Z
REM	Allows you to place remarks within a program listing.	10 REM anything you want
RESTORE	Resets data pointer to the specified DATA statement.	10 RESTORE 1
RETURN	Returns control from a subroutine to the statement immediately following the GOSUB.	10 RETURN
STOP	Stops program.	10 STOP

Functions

ABS(X)	Absolute value of X.
ATN(X)	Arctangent of X in radians.
COS(X)	Cosine of X in radians.
EXP(X)	E raised to the power X.
INT(X)	Largest integer \leq X.
LOG(X)	Natural logarithm of X; X>0.
RND	The next pseudo-random number between 0 and 1.
SGN(X)	The sign of X; -1 if X<0, 0 if X=0, and +1 if X>0.
SIN(X)	The sine of X in radians.
SQR(X)	The positive square root of X.
TAN(X)	The tangent of X in radians.

Operations: + - * / ^ = MOD DIV

Relations: < > <= = <> =

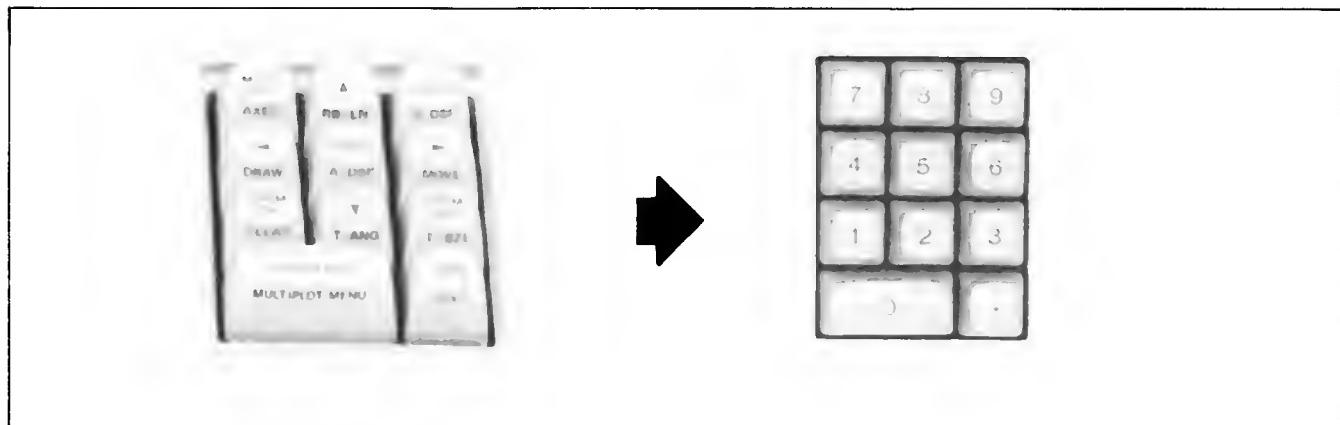
Is That All There Is?

This section has discussed only a few of the features available in Terminal BASIC. The remainder of this manual explains the many other capabilities available.

- You can for instance, reconfigure the keyboard so that one or all of the keys will generate a different character. As an example, you can change the graphics control keys (ZOOM, CURSOR FAST, etc.) to a numeric keypad (0-9,) with the following statements:

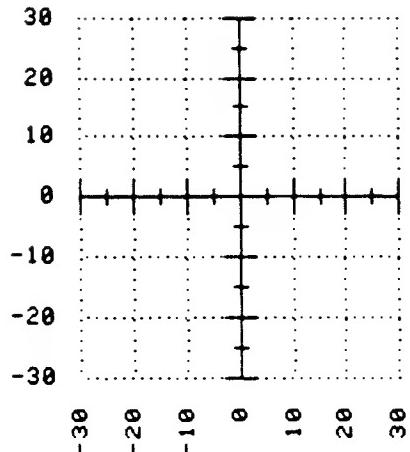
```
10 FOR I=1 TO 11
20 READ Ke , Code
30 KEYCDE(2,Ke ,Code)
40 NEXT I
50 DATA 86,46,78,48,6,49,14,50,22,51,7,52
60 DATA 15,53,23,54,95,55,87,56,79,57
```

When this routine is executed, the graphics keys will generate the same characters as a numeric keypad whenever the right shift key is pressed at the same time as a graphic control key.



- You can control all of the graphics capabilities of the terminal with a high level graphics language. For example, the single statement LGRID (5,5,0,0,2,2) can be used to generate a labeled grid.

LGRID (5,5,0,0,2,2)



- You can directly access peripheral equipment such as a graphics digitizer to allow you to input coordinate data or a graphic plotter to output data. The following program generates a bar code pattern on a printer.

```

10 ASSIGN "HP-IB#4" TO #1
20 FOR I=1 TO 50
30 PRINT #1;"Ec*b10W";RPT$(CHR$(90),10);
40 NEXT I

```



- You can put your program to “sleep” and resume normal terminal operation until a special key is struck at which time your program will “wakeup”, perform some function, and then go back to “sleep”.

The statements in Terminal BASIC use data in the form of decimal numbers, character strings, and logical values. Any of these types of data can be combined into expressions. The data can be a specific value or constant. It may also be referred to by name as a variable. A constant has only one value while a variable can be assigned different values at different times.

CONSTANTS

Terminal BASIC programs can be used in a variety of applications such as data entry and retrieval, scientific and business calculations, and data display. Each application has its own requirements for the data it uses. Some programs work only with numeric data while others use only alphabetic data. Some programs perform calculations on very large numbers, while others use small numbers with many digits of precision. In the Terminal BASIC language, you can specify the types of data you are going to use in a program or you can simply let the program use the standard (default) types. The purpose of this section is to describe the types of data that can be processed by BASIC and to introduce files and arrays, two features of BASIC designed to help organize and manipulate large sets of data.

BASIC uses two major classes of data:

- numeric data
- string data

A numeric data item can be any number between 10^{-38} and 10^{+38} , such as: 34, -22.999, 897564, and .0000001. Numbers that exceed 10^{+38} are not accepted. Numbers that are smaller than 10^{-38} are converted to 0. The precision of numbers is 6 digits for numbers of type short and 16 digits for numbers of type long. Numbers that exceed the available precision are rounded. A description of number types is given in the following paragraphs.

A string data item is a sequence of characters, such as:

```
THIS IS A STRING
246 Washington Blvd.
#X!* JULY 4, 2076
```

The digits 0, 1, ... 9 are included in the list. The difference between the numeric digits 0, 1, ... 9 and the corresponding ASCII characters is that arithmetic calculations can be performed only on the numeric digits. Arithmetic calculations cannot be performed on digits that are a part of strings. Typical data items that contain digits that are not used in arithmetic calculations are addresses, zip codes, part numbers, and dates. Note that it is easy to convert strings of numeric characters to numeric data using the VAL function (see Section 12).

The characters used by the terminal consist of the 128 ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) characters. The ASCII character set is made up of both printing and control characters. Table 2-1 contains a list of the ASCII characters. Note that a space " " is a valid character.

Table 2-1. List of ASCII Characters

0	!	A	a
1	"	B	b
2	#	C	c
3	\$	D	d
4	%	E	e
5	&	F	f
6	'	G	g
7	(	H	h
8	)	I	i
9	*	J	j
A	+	K	k
B	,	L	l
C	-	M	m
D	.	N	n
E	/	O	o
F	0	P	p
G	1	Q	q
H	2	R	r
I	3	S	s
J	4	T	t
K	5	U	u
L	6	V	v
M	7	W	w
N	8	X	x
O	9	Y	y
P	:	Z	z
Q	;	[{
R	<	\	|
S	=]	}
T	>	^	~
U	?	_	█

E-Notation

BASIC represents very large and very small numbers in E-notation (similar to scientific notation). Numbers are printed using E-notation when the number of digits needed exceeds 16. Numeric values that exceed 16 digits of precision or values of 10E38 or greater are represented as 9.999...E38. Values smaller than 1E-38 are represented as 0.

Rather than print 17,000,000,000,000,000

You should use: 17E15 (17 x 10¹⁵)

Scientific	Long Hand Notation	E-Notation
400,000,000,000,000,000,000	4 x 10 ²³	4E23
0.000000000000000235	2.35 x 10 ⁻¹⁷	2.35E-17

An implied 1 is not allowed, since E9 is a valid variable name. Instead use 1E9.

Octal and Hexadecimal Data

The terminal will accept octal or hexadecimal data as input. The data must be in the form ###Q or ###H. The input will be automatically converted to a decimal equivalent before being passed to your program.

Example: 377Q = OFFH = 255

This means that if your input data contains a "Q" or "H" following the numeric value, you will not receive an error message, and the data will not be interpreted as a decimal number.

Example:

```
>10 INPUT N
>20 PRINT N
>30 GOTO 10
>RUN
?10 [RETURN]
10
?10Q [RETURN]
8
?10H [RETURN]
16
```

Note that hexadecimal numbers must begin with a numeric digit (eg. OFFH). If you attempt to enter a hexidecimal number that begins with a letter, it will be seen as a variable name (ABH = Abh).

STRING DATA

A string can be from 0 to 255 ASCII characters long. When you use a string in a BASIC program, you must always enclose it in quotation marks. The quotation marks around the string are not considered part of the string. Any ASCII character except for the double quotation mark and the carriage return can be enclosed in quotation marks. To include quotation marks or carriage returns in a string you must use the CHR\$ function (refer to Section 3). A detailed description of strings is given in Section 7.

Examples	Notes
"THIS IS A STRING"	This string is 16 characters long.
"#X-!"	This string is 4 characters long.
" "	This is a string of 4 blanks or space characters.
""	This is the null string. The null string has no characters. Its length is 0.
THIS IS A STRING	Invalid. Quotes are missing.
"#X-!	Invalid. End quotes are missing.
#X-!"	Invalid. Beginning quotes are missing
"Quote is ""	Invalid. String cannot use a quote character.
"12.95"	This string contains digits. It can be converted to the equivalent numeric data 12.95 using the VAL function. As shown it is a string of five characters.

BASIC requires that all quote marks must occur in pairs, even if they are in a REM statement or comment. If individual quotes are required, the CHR\$ function can be used to generate a quote character.

VARIABLES

Variable names are used to represent numeric or string values in a program. For instance, in the statement

```
10 LET Limit=999
```

"Limit" is the name of a variable and 999 is the value to be assigned to Limit. Numeric values are represented by numeric variables; strings are represented by string variables. Unlike constants, the value associated with a variable can change during program execution. When referencing a variable the program will always use the current value of the variable.

Numeric Variables

A numeric variable name is composed of an upper case letter, A through Z, which may be followed by any combination of up to 14 digits, lower case letters, and the symbol “_” (underscore). You may enter characters in upper or lower case. BASIC will automatically convert them to the variable name format (the first character uppercase and the remainder lowercase). The variable name cannot start with a string of characters used by BASIC to identify commands, statements, or functions (i.e. RUN, END, COS, etc.). A list of these “reserved words” is given in table 2-2.

Examples

x	Valid.
y2	Valid.
A12345678901234	Valid.
Program_cntr	Valid.
9x	Invalid. Digit must follow letter.

If you use a numeric variable name that is longer than 15 characters, the extra characters are ignored. For instance, the variables

Program_number_1 and Program_number_2

are equivalent since only the first 15 characters of each are retained.

Variable names are terminated by a blank or any disallowed character (#, %, etc.).

Note: Array names and subscripted variables are special kinds of variables. They are discussed in this section under Arrays .

Numeric variables are set to 0 each time the RUN command is executed.

Type Declaration Statements

A numeric variable is assumed to refer to a value in the REAL range unless it appears in a type declaration statement. There are three forms of the type declaration statement corresponding to the three types of numeric variables. These statements specify the range that a variable may represent.

Example	Notes
10 INTEGER N,C	Declares that the variables N and C will have values in the INTEGER range.
30 SHORT S,Title	The variables S and Title are type SHORT.
40 LONG X,Y,Z	X,Y, and Z are type LONG.

Note that statement 30 is not necessary since any numeric variables that do not appear in a type declaration statement are assumed to be type SHORT. However, for documentation purposes, it is recommended that all numeric variables that are used in a program appear in type declaration statements.

Type declaration statements are executable statements. If a variable in a type declaration statement has been listed in a previously executed type declaration statement or was used in any previously executed statement, a REDECLARED VARIABLE error will occur. This error will also occur if the same type declaration statement is re-executed.

It may be helpful to use the program listed below to become familiar with the different types of numeric data. Enter the program by following the same steps used to enter the sample program in Section 1. This program calculates the sum (Sum) and the mean (Mean) of five numbers (A,B,C,D, and E). When you enter RUN , the program will execute.

A “?” character will be displayed and the program will wait for you to enter the five numbers. If the values you provide are not in the SHORT range, they are automatically converted to SHORT values before any calculations are performed, and the results are SHORT values.

Sample Program

```
10 REM THIS PROGRAM CALCULATES THE SUM AND
20 REM THE MEAN OF FIVE NUMBERS (A,B,C,D,E)
30 INPUT A,B,C,D,E
40 LET Sum=A+B+C+D+E
50 LET Mean = Sum/5
60 PRINT A,B,C,D,E
70 PRINT "SUM =" ; Sum
80 PRINT "MEAN =" ; Mean
```

RUN 
? 98,94,82,86,78
98 94 82 85 78
SUM = 438
MEAN = 87.6

RUN 
?1.234S67,2.34S678,3.4S6789,4.S67890,S.678901
1.234S7 2.34568 3.4S679 4.S6789 S.6789
SUM = 17.2838
MEAN = 3.45677

Now change the program by inserting a type declaration statement as statement 25. For instance, what is the result if you add this statement?

```
25 INTEGER A,B,C,D,E,Sum,Mean
```

Does the result change if statement 25 is

```
25 INTEGER Sum, Mean ?
```

String Variables

A string variable name is formed by including a dollar sign ("\$") as the last character of a valid numeric variable name. String variable names are limited to 14 characters followed by a "\$". If more than 14 characters are used, BASIC will use the first 14 characters and the "\$". This means that "String-number_11\$" and "String-number_12\$" are both equivalent to "String-number\$".

Examples	Notes
X\$	Valid.
Y8\$	Valid.
String_1\$	Valid.
Stringvariable\$	Valid.
\$X	Invalid. \$ must come last.
String_variable\$	Valid, but exceeds 15 character limit. Extra characters ignored, therefore this is the same as String_variabl\$.

Although string variable names are very similar to numeric variable names, these two variable types are completely independent of each other. For instance, the variable names X8 and X8\$ would both be allowed in the same program. Section VII contains a detailed description of strings and string functions.

DIM Statement

For string variables which will contain strings longer than 18 characters, you must specify the string variable name and the maximum length of the string, in brackets, in a DIM statement.

Example

```
string  
names  
-----  
10 DIM S$(25),C$(35)  
maximum  
length
```

This statement reserves data space for a 25 character string S\$ and a 35 character string C\$.

A string variable defined by a DIM statement can contain a string shorter than the length specified. However, if a string is longer than the specified length, all extra characters to the right are ignored (truncated).

Sample Program

```
10 DIM S$(25)  
20 S$ = "THIS STRING IS LONGER THAN 25 CHAR-  
ACTERS"  
30 PRINT S$  
40 END
```

RUN 

THIS STRING IS LONGER THA

A string variable that does not appear in a DIM statement is assumed to have a maximum length of 18 characters. Thus, string variables that will always contain strings shorter than 19 characters do not have to be dimensioned. For documentation purposes, however, it is recommended that you dimension all string variables.

Sample Program

Notes

```
10 DIM A$(12),B$(5)  
20 LET A$="STRING"  
30 LET B$"STRING"  
40 LET C$"STRING"  
50 PRINT A$  
60 PRINT B$  
70 PRINT C$  
80 END
```

Statement 10 reserves space for a 12 character string A\$ and a 5 character string B\$. The string C\$, by default, has a maximum length of 18 characters.

RUN 

STRING
STRIN
STRING

Notice that because the string "STRING" is longer than the 5 character maximum specified for B\$, only the first five characters of "STRING" are printed.

DIM statements are executable statements. If a variable in a DIM statement was used in a previously executed statement, a REDECLARED VARIABLE error will occur when the DIM statement is executed. This error will also occur if the DIM statement is re-executed.

ARRAYS AND SUBSCRIPTED VARIABLES

Variable names can also refer to arrays of data. An array is generally used for processing an entire set of data rather than a single data item, but you can access an individual data item within an array. The individual data items in arrays are called array elements. Subscripted variables are used to refer to individual array elements.

An array may have from 1 to 32 dimensions. Below are examples of 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional arrays. Arrays of four or more dimensions are not so conveniently represented on paper but they can be set up and manipulated easily in a BASIC program. The complete description of how to use arrays is in Section 6.

Examples

One-dimensional array:

```
1.5  2.3  3.4  4.7  10.7 .8  3.5  4.6  2.0  1.1  2.3
```

Two-dimensional array:

12.95	12.95	11.50	11.50	11.50	11.50
3.95	3.50	3.50	3.50	3.50	3.00
.80	.80	.80	.80	.80	.80

Two-dimensional array:

McConnoll	Pat	123-4577	Palo Alto
Stearne	Bill	890-2345	Santa Clara
Allan	Walter	678-9023	Saratoga
Spencer	Dave	456-7890	Cupertino
Wilson	Ed	134-5788	San Jose
Greene	Dave	901-2456	Mountain View
Underwood	Doug	789-0123	Los Altos
Olsen	Mary	456-7890	Menlo Park

Three-dimensional array A(3,3,3):

123	012	987
456	345	654
789	678	321

Subscripted variables are used to refer to individual elements in an array. Elements in 2-dimensional and larger arrays are identified by 2 or more subscripts, separated by commas. For instance, A(2,3) is a subscripted variable that refers to the element in row 2, column 3 of array A. The subscripts can be numeric expressions, numeric variables, or constants. The subscript is rounded to an integer if necessary.

String variables can also be subscripted. In this case the subscripts select character positions from within the string. For example, if A\$="MORNING", then A\$(5,1)="I". Additional information on strings and subscripted strings is given in Section 7.

FILES

You will want to store large sets of data in files. Files allow you to organize and store data in a manner that provides access to individual items. The data in a file can be of a single type or the file can contain many data types. The amount of data that can be stored in a file is not limited by BASIC. It is limited only by the amount of storage space available on the system. A data file may be stored on a cartridge tape or on a remote computer. Section 7 describes the way files are created and accessed in BASIC.

Logical Values

When a variable or numeric expression is used as a logical value, the variable or expression is evaluated as true if it is non-zero and false if it is 0. This means that -.1 for example would evaluate to true.

Example:

```
10 FOR I = -3 TO 2
20 IF I THEN 50
30 PRINT "I=";I;" IS FALSE"
40 GOTO 60
50 PRINT "I=";I;" IS TRUE"
0 NEXT I
RUN RETURN
I=-3 IS TRUE
I=-2 IS TRUE
I=-1 IS TRUE
I= 0 IS FALSE
I= 1 IS TRUE
I= 2 IS TRUE
```

Note that if a noninteger data type is used, round off errors may prevent you from obtaining exact values for variables. In the above example, if a step size of .2 is used, round off errors will produce a value for I of 3.8743E-07 instead of zero. To avoid this type of error you should check for a range of values that can serve as your 0". For example:

```
20 IF ABS(I)>.001 THEN 50
```

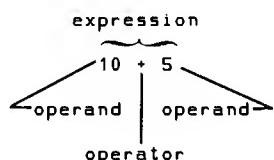
Operators, Functions and Expressions

This section describes the various operations and functions that can be performed on BASIC numeric and string data. It includes four types of operators and five types of functions. These operators and functions can be used to create expressions. Expressions are evaluated to obtain numbers, strings, or logical values. Most applications will use only a small subset of the available operators and functions.

Operators	Functions
• Arithmetic	• Numeric
• Relational	• String
• Logical	• Print
• String	• Input/Output
	• Other

OPERATORS

An operator indicates a mathematical or logical operation to be performed on one or two values (operands) resulting in a single value. The combination of one or two operands with an operator is called an expression.



Expressions in BASIC are similar in form to normal algebraic expressions. This allows most arithmetic operations to be programmed directly without changing their form.

The term operand can refer to a number, a string, or a variable. Generally, an operator is between two operands but an operator can also precede a single operand. For instance, the minus sign is an operator which indicates subtraction when it appears between two operands (e.g., 512 - 88) and negation when it appears before a single operand (e.g., -1).

Operators may be divided into four classes depending on the kind of operation performed: arithmetic, string, relational, and logical (Boolean).

CAUTION

When operators or numeric functions other than +, -, /, or * are used, the operands are converted to type Short before the calculation is made. This may cause the result to vary from Long precision results.

Expressions	Notes
A - B	
X + 1	
"AB" & "CD"	
-1	
+2.14	
2.14	
N\$	
"STRING"	Strings or string variables can also be considered expressions
(P+5)/27	P is a variable that must have been previously assigned a value. 5 and 27 are constants. The slash is the divide operator. Parentheses group the portions of the expression to be evaluated first. Suppose that the current value of P is 49. The expression is then (49+5)/27 and evaluates to 2.
(N-(R+5))-T	N, R, and T are all numeric variables that must have been previously assigned values. The innermost parentheses are evaluated first. Suppose that N is 20, R is 10, and T is 5. The expression is (20-(10+5))-5 and evaluates to 0.

Arithmetic Operators

The arithmetic operators are:

Operators	Operations	Examples
+	add	10 + 5 = 15
-	subtract, negate	10 - 5 = 5 -2
*	multiply	10 * 5 = 50
/	floating point divide	15/10 = 1.5
^	exponentiate	8^3 = 512
DIV	integer divide	15 DIV 10 = 1 -15 DIV 10 = -1
MOD	modulo; A MOD B = A - (B * INT(A/B))	38 MOD 8 = 6 -13 MOD 2 = -1 -13 MOD -2 = -1

Note that, unlike algebraic notation, implied multiplication does not exist in BASIC. Thus, $A \times B$ must be written as $A * B$ rather than just AB . The operation of raising a number to a power also requires an explicit operator. Thus A^B is written as A^B .

There are two division operators: “/” and DIV. Division with the “/” operator (called floating point division) results in a value in the LONG range if either of the operands is type LONG. Otherwise, the result will be a SHORT value. When the DIV operator is used (integer division), the result is an INTEGER value.

The operands for MOD and DIV are rounded to integers before the operations are performed. This means that MOD and DIV can only be used on numbers in the INTEGER range of values.

Examples

```
3/2 = 1.5
3 DIV 2 = 1

-10/5 = -2.0
-10 DIV 5 = -2

9.99999999/1 = 9.99999999
9.99999999 DIV 1 = 10
```

The function INT(X) which is used to calculate A MOD B returns the greatest integer less than or equal to X. So, using the formula A MOD B = A - B * INT(A/B), we have:

```
38 MOD 6 = 38 - 6 * INT(38/6)
           = 38 - 6 * 6
           = 38 - 36
           = 2

-13 MOD 2 = -13 - 2 * INT(-13/2)
            = -13 - 2 * -7
            = -13 - (-14)
            = 1

-13 MOD -2 = -13 - (-2) * INT(-13/-2)
              = -13 - (-2) * 6
              = -13 - (-12)
              = -1
```

Expressions with more than two values are evaluated according to the following hierarchy of operators:

- (highest)
- Unary +, -
- *, /
- DIV
- MOD
- +, - (lowest)

Examples

```
5 + 6 * 7 = 5 + 42 = 47
5 * 6 + 7 = 30 + 7 = 37
```

If operators are at the same level, the order is from left to right in the expression.

Examples

```
30 - 40 + 100 = -10 + 100 = 90
2 + 3*2 - 1 = 2 + 9 - 1 = 11 - 1 = 10
```

String Operators

The string operator “&” is used to combine two strings into one. This is called string concatenation. For example, if A\$ = “ABC” and B\$ = “DEF”, then A\$ & B\$ = “ABCDEF”. The characters in B\$ immediately follow the characters in A\$.

Example:

```
10 A$="TEST OF TERMINAL"
20 B$="COMPUTER"
30 C$=A$(1,8)&B$&" SYSTEM"
40 PRINT C$
RUN
TEST OF COMPUTER SYSTEM
```

Relational Operators

The relational operators are:

Operator	Operations	Example
<	less than	A < B
>	greater than	A > B
<=	less than or equal to	A <= B
>=	greater than or equal to	A >= B
=	equals	A = B
<>	not equal to	A <> B

When relational operators are used in a numeric expression, the value 1 is returned if the relation is found to be true; the value 0 is returned if the relation is false. For instance, A = B is evaluated as 1 if A and B are equal in value, or as 0 if they are not equal. If A = 1, B = 2, and C = 3, then (A * B) < (A - C/3) is evaluated as 0 (false) because A * B = 2 which is not less than A - C/3 (=0).

Parentheses can be used to override this order.

Examples

```
30 - (40 + 100) = 30 - 140 = -110
2 + 3*(2 - 1) = 2 + 3*(1) = 2 + 3 = 5
5 + 6 * 7 = 5 + 42 = 47
(5 + 6) * 7 = 11 * 7 = 77
14/7 * 6/4 = 2 * 6/4 = 12/4 = 3
14/(7 * 6)/4 = 14/42/4 = .333.../4 = .083
```

When parentheses are nested, operations within the innermost pair are performed first.

Examples

```
100/(4 + 6) * 2 = 100/(10 * 2) = 100/20 = 5
2 * ((3 + 4) - 5)/6 = 2 * (7 - 5)/6 = 2 * 2/6 = 4/6 = .6666...
```

If the two operands are of different numeric types, the operand with the lower type is converted to the higher type, the operation is performed, and the result is in the range of the higher type. The hierarchy of numeric types is:

LONG	(highest)
SHORT	
INTEGER	(lowest)

Sample Program

```
10 INPUT A,B,C
20 Logic = (A * B) < C
30 IF Logic THEN 60
40 PRINT "(A * B) < C is false -logic";Logic
50 GOTO 70
60 PRINT "(A * B) < C is true -logic";Logic
70 END

RUN RETURN
??3,4,5
(A * B) < C is false -logic 0
```

Relational operators are also used to compare strings. Strings are compared according to their associated numeric values in the ASCII code (see Appendix A). The strings are compared character by character until a difference is found, or until the end of a string is reached. If the ends of both strings are found at the same time, the strings are equal. If the end of one string is reached, then that string is an initial substring of the other, and is considered to be less than the other.

Examples	Notes
"ABC" < "ABC "	"ABC" is an initial substring of "ABC".
"AB " = "AB "	
"B" > "ABC"	"B" has a higher numeric equivalent than "A" in the ASCII code.
"AB\$" < "AB**"	"\$" has a lower numeric equivalent than "*" in the ASCII code.

The null string ("") is always less than every other string and equal only to another null string.

More information on substrings is presented at the end of this section.

Logical Operators

The logical operators (sometimes called Boolean operators) are:

- AND
- OR
- NOT
- XOR
- CMP

These operators are most frequently used as part of an IF...THEN statement. The operands used with logical operators are converted to type INTEGER before the logical operators are used. If the operand is outside of the range of INTEGERS (-32,768 to 32,776) an error will result.

The expressions that the logical operators compare can be either relational or non-relational. If the expression is relational (like $A < B$), whether it is true or false is determined by the relation of the operands. If the expression is non-relational (like A), it is true if its arithmetic value is not zero and false if its arithmetic value is zero.

The AND, OR, XOR, and CMP operators act on the operands bit by bit. The operands are made up of a sign bit and 15 binary bits.

AND

AND compares two operands. The operands can be either INTEGER expressions or relational expressions. The result has both a numeric and a logical value. The numeric value of the comparison is obtained by comparing the values of the two operands, bit by bit. If both bits are 1 the resulting bit is 1. If either bit is 0 then the resulting bit is 0. For example, if operand A = 5 and operand B = 3, then $A \text{ AND } B = 1$.

```
A = 5 = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1
B = 3 = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1
----- 
A AND B = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 = 1
```

The logical value of the comparison is the same as all other logical values, false (0) if the result is zero, and true (1) if the result is non-zero.

OR

OR compares two operands. The operands can be either INTEGER expressions or relational expressions. The result has both a numeric and a logical value. The numeric value is obtained by comparing the operands, bit by bit. If either bit is 1 then the resulting bit is 1. If neither bit is 1 then the resulting bit is 0. For example, if $A = 3$ and $B = 4$, then $A \text{ OR } B = 7$.

```
A = 3 = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1
B = 4 = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0
----- 
A OR B = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 = 7
```

The logical value of the comparison is the same as all other logical values, false (0) if the result is zero, and true (1) if the result is non-zero.

NOT

NOT changes only the logical value of an expression. If the expression is true, NOT changes its logical value to false (0). If the expression is false, NOT changes its logical value to true (1). The NOT operator does not have a numeric value as a result.

XOR

The XOR operator performs an exclusive OR of the operands. The operation is applied bit by bit. If both bits are 1, or if both bits are 0, the result is 0. If the bits are not equal, the result is 1. For example, if A = 7 and B = 2, then A XOR B = 5.

```
A = 7    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1  
B = 2    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0  
-----  
A XOR B = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 = 5
```

The logical value of the comparison is the same as all other logical values, false (0) if the result is zero, and true (1) if the result is non-zero.

CMP

The CMP operator complements the operand. The operation is applied bit by bit. If a bit is 1, it results in 0. If a bit is 0, it results in 1. For example, if A = 5, then CMP 5 = -6.

```
A = 5    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1  
-----  
CMP A = 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 = -6
```

Examples:

Assume A = 0, B = 2, C = 4, and D = 4.

A < B AND C = D	True because both relational expressions A < B and C = D are true.
A AND C = D	False because the arithmetic value of A equals zero (false).
B AND C	False because B and C do not have any common bits.
A OR B	True because the arithmetic value of B is not zero (so B is true).
NOT A	Since A is zero (false), NOT A is true.
NOT B OR NOT C	False. NOT B is false and NOT C is false.

When arithmetic, relational, and logical operators appear in a single numeric equation, the operations are performed according to the following hierarchy:

^ (highest)
unary +,-
*, /
DIV
MOD
arithmetic +, - and & (string concatenation)
Relational (=,<,>,<=,>=,<>)
NOT
CMP
AND
OR
XOR (lowest)

FUNCTIONS

A function is a routine that manipulates numeric or string data and produces a numeric or string value as a result. Some of the commonly used functions, such as the one to compute the square root of a number are supplied as a part of BASIC. A function is identified by a three or four character name followed by optional operands in parentheses. Since a function results in a single value, it can be used in an expression wherever a constant or variable would be used. Some common functions are:

- | | |
|--------|--|
| SQR(X) | Where X is a numeric expression that results in a value or 0. When called the function returns the positive square root of X. For example, if N=2, SQR(N+2)=2. |
| ABS(X) | Where X is a numeric expression. When called, the function returns the absolute value of X. For example, ABS(-33)=33. |

Numeric Functions

Numeric functions return a numeric value as a result. The standard functions are listed in table 3-3.

Table 3-3. Numeric Functions

Function	Description
ABS(X)	Absolute value of X.
ATN(X)	Arctangent of X; result expressed in radians.
COS(X)	Cosine of X; X expressed in radians.
EXP(X)	E raised to the power X.
INT(X)	Largest integer <= X.
LOG(X)	Natural logarithm; X>0.
LONG(X)	X converted to LONG representation.
SGN(X)	The sign of X; -1 if X<0, 0 if X=0, and +1 if X>0.
SHORT(X)	X converted to SHORT representation.
SIN(X)	Sine of X; X expressed in radians.
SQR(X)	The positive square root of X.
TAN(X)	Tangent of X; X expressed in radians.

Each numeric function consists of a function name followed by one parameter. The parameter may be a number (as in statement 10 below), a numeric variable (statement 20), or a numeric expression (statement 30). Since the result of a numeric function is always a single value, a numeric function can be used as an operand in an expression (statement 40), or as a parameter of a numeric function (statement 50).

Examples:

10 LET A = COS(0)	A equals the cosine of 0 = 1.
20 LET B = ABS(A)	B equals the absolute value of 1 = 1.
30 LET C = SQR(A + B)	C equals the square root of (1 + 1) = 1.414214.
40 LET D = COS(A)^2+SIN(A)^2	D equals the sum of COS(A) squared plus SIN(A) squared.
50 LET E = ABS(SIN(0))	SIN(0) = 0; absolute value of 0 = 0; therefore E = 0.

Other functions are used to manipulate strings or arrays and to control the format of program output. A complete list of the functions available in BASIC is given in Appendix D at the back of this manual.

RANDOM NUMBERS

A pseudo random number generator, the RND function, is provided for programs that perform simulations. Each time the RND function is called, a random number between 0.0 and 1.0 is returned. The RND function is called a pseudo random number generator because the same sequence of random numbers is generated each time the BASIC interpreter is loaded.

Sample Program

```
S DIM A(10)
10 FOR N = 1 TO 10
20 A(N) = RND
30 PRINT A(N)
40 NEXT N
```

RUN

```
.8970581
.779265
.35281
.757005
.8578032
.7452424
.7903184
.507
.11975
.859175
```

STRING FUNCTIONS

BASIC provides the following string functions:

CHR\$(X)	Returns the ASCII character equivalent of the numeric expression X. The value of X must be between 0 and 255. CHR\$(65) = "A".
RPT\$(S\$, X)	Repeats S\$ X times.
TRIM\$(S\$)	Returns a string which is equal to S\$ with all leading and trailing blanks stripped off.
UPC\$(S\$)	Returns a string equivalent to S\$ with each of the characters shifted to upper case.
VAL\$(X)	Converts the value of the numeric expression X to its corresponding string of ASCII digits. VAL\$(65) = "65".

The following set of functions have numeric function names because the result of each is a number, not a string. They are included here because they are used to process string data.

LEN(S\$)	Returns the number of ASCII characters in the string S\$.
NUM(S\$)	Returns a numeric value between 0 and 255 corresponding to the first character of the string S\$. NUM("1") = 49.
POS(S1\$, S2\$)	Searches the string S1\$ for the first occurrence of the string S2\$. Returns the starting index if found, otherwise returns 0.
VAL(S\$)	Changes a string of ASCII digits (not characters) to its corresponding numeric representation. S\$ may include a decimal point. VAL("1") = 1.

Examples

RPT\$, TRIM\$, LEN, and POS are used to manipulate and create strings:

10 LET S\$ = "REPEAT"	Output is:
20 PRINT RPT\$(S\$, 3)	REPEATREPEATREPEAT
10 LET A\$ = " AB C "	Prints AB C (no leading or trailing blanks)
20 LET B\$ = TRIM\$(A\$)	
30 PRINT B\$	
10 DIM A\$(20)	Prints the number 4
20 LET A\$ = "ABCD"	
30 PRINT LEN(A\$)	
10 LET T\$ = "Television"	
20 LET V\$ = "vision"	
30 LET C = POS(T\$, V\$)	C = 5

NUM and CHR\$ are used to go back and forth between an ASCII character and its ASCII code value:

10 LET A\$ = CHR\$(13)	PRINT statement will
20 PRINT A\$;	execute a carriage
	return
10 LET A\$ = CHR\$(69)	Prints the letter E
20 PRINT A\$	
10 PRINT "QUOTE";CHR\$(34);"MARK"	Prints QUOTE "
	MARK
10 PRINT NUM("Egg")	Prints the number 69
	(ASCII numeric equiv-
	alent of capital E)
10 B\$= "Payrol1"	
20 PRINT NUM(B\$[2])	Prints the number 97.

VAL\$ and VAL are used to go back and forth between strings of ASCII digits ("1234") and numeric values:

10 LET B\$ = VAL\$(COS(PI))	Prints -1
20 PRINT B\$	
5 LET Pay\$ = "127.99"	
10 LET D=VAL(Pay\$)	D = 127.99
10 LET T\$ = VAL\$(128)	T\$="128"

Statements

SECTION

IV

This section introduces program statements and describes some of the fundamental statement types. All programs are made up of numbered statements. These statements are executed by the BASIC Interpreter in numeric sequence to perform the program task.

The statements presented in this section are:

REM	RESTORE	FOR and NEXT
LET	PRINT	GOSUB
INPUT	GOTO	RETURN
LINPUT	ON...GOTO	ON...GOSUB
READ	IF...THEN	STOP and END
DATA		

The REM statement and comments are useful for program documentation. All programs should be carefully documented to make them easier to debug, use, and maintain. The LET, INPUT, LINPUT, READ, DATA, and RESTORE statements supply data for a program. The PRINT statement prints program results. The rest of the statements described here are used to control the flow of a program by branching, looping, and calling subroutines. Statements that apply to more advanced programming techniques such as formatted output, string operations, file operations, and subprogramming are covered in separate sections.

The discussion of each statement begins with a description of what the statement is used for and a few examples to demonstrate how it can (or cannot) be used. In most cases, this will be sufficient explanation to begin using the statement in your programs. The remainder of each discussion describes the statement in more detail, often illustrating special uses with more examples and sample programs.

REM Statement

The REM statement allows you to insert helpful notes and messages in your program. These statements do not affect the execution of the program (but they do take up storage space). The name and purpose of the program, how to use it, how certain parts of the program work, and expected results are useful information to include in a program for documentation. If control is passed to the REM statement, execution continues with the statement following the REM statement.

Examples:

```
10 REM YOU CAN SAY
20 REM --- ANYTHING YOU WANT
30 REM: TNAW UDY YAW YNA
40 REM.... IN A $&#*`@ REM STATEMENT
```

The message itself can contain any printable characters.

The exclamation mark (!) enables you to put comments on the same line as a statement.

Examples:

```
10 LET A= B^2 ! SET A EQUAL TO B SQUARED
20 PRINT A ! PRINT THE VALUE OF A
30 ! THE REMAINING STATEMENTS COMPUTE THE SIN FUNC
```

Any printable character may follow the letters REM in a REM statement or the exclamation mark in other statements. Note that you cannot execute statements or functions that follow an exclamation mark ("!") in a line.

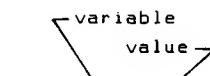
If quotes are used in the REM statement, they must be used in pairs. You cannot use unmatched quotes in REM statements.

REM statements and comments following exclamation marks are part of a BASIC program and are output when the program is listed, displayed, saved, or recorded but they have no effect on program execution.

LET Statement

The LET statement assigns a value to one or more variables. The value can be an expression, constant, function, or another variable.

Examples:



```
10 LET A = 0
20 LET B = A
30 LET M$ = T$
40 LET R = SIN(T)^2
50 LET X = X$
60 LET X$ = X
```

Sets A to 0.
Sets B to the value of A.
Sets M\$ to the value of T\$.
Computes the value of the expression SIN(T) ^ 2 and assigns that value to R.
INVALID. Cannot assign a string value to a numeric variable.
INVALID. Cannot assign a numeric value to a string variable.

Notice that the equals sign does not indicate equality, but is a signal that the value on the right is to be assigned to the variable on the left.

If the numeric type of the value on the right of the equal sign is different than the numeric type of the variable on the left, then when the value is assigned to the variable it is converted to the same type as the variable. SHORT and LONG values are rounded to the nearest whole number when being converted to INTEGER.

Examples:

```
10 INTEGER I
20 LONG X
30 LET X = 1.998
40 LET I = X
```

X has the LONG value 1.998. The value of X is still 1.998 but the value assigned to I is the INTEGER 2, that is, 1.998 converted to an INTEGER.

For convenience LET may be omitted from the statement. This is the only statement in the Basic language in which the statement name is optional.

Examples:

10 A = 0	! Same as: 10 LET A = 0
20 B = A	! Same as: 20 LET B = A
30 M\$ = T\$	! Same as: 30 LET M\$ = T\$
40 R = SIN(T)^2	! Same as: 40 LET R = SIN (T)^2

Multiple Assignment

Multiple assignment allows you to assign a value to several variables in a single LET statement. For example, the statement

```
30 LET A,B,C = 12
```

assigns the value 12 to the variables A, B, and C. The following two sets of statements are equivalent:

```
5 Pi=3.14
10 INTEGER I,J
20 LET I = 0
30 LET J = 0
40 X = Pi
50 J = Pi
60 Y = Pi
```

```
5 Pi=3.14
10 INTEGER I,J
20 LET I,J = 0
30 X,J,Y = Pi
```

```
30 B$,C$ = D$
```

```
40 A,B = C = D
```

```
50 B$ = A = B
```

Variables used in multiple assignment statements are assigned values from left to right. This is very important when using subscripted variables, particularly if the subscript contains a variable that is assigned a new value in the same statement.

Examples:

```
10 N=5
20 A(N),A(N+1)=7
```

Array element A(5) is assigned the value 7 and then element A(6) is assigned the value 7.

```
30 N=3
40 A(N)=6
50 A(A(N)),A(N)=7
```

Array element A(6) is set to 7 and then element A(3) is set to 7.

Example:

```
10 N=2
20 A(N),N,A(N)=3
30 PRINT A(2), N, A(3)

>RUN [Return]
3      3      3
```

Relational Tests for Equality

The statement 30 LET A = B = C is a relational test for equality that sets the value of A to either 1 or 0 depending on whether B = C or B <> C. (See 'Relational Operators', Section 3.) A conflict between multiple assignment and a relational test for equality cannot occur since the multiple assignment statement uses commas to separate variables. The examples below illustrate multiple assignment statements and relational tests for equality.

Examples:

```
10 A,B = C
```

Multiple assignment: B=C and A=C.

```
20 A = B$ = C$
```

Relational test for equality:
Does B\$ = C\$?
If YES, then A = 1;
if NO, then A = 0.

This is not multiple assignment because a string value cannot be assigned to a numeric variable.

```
30 B$,C$ = D$
```

Multiple assignment: C\$=D\$ and B\$=D\$.

```
40 A,B = C = D
```

Combination: Does C = D?
If YES, then B=1 and A=1;
if NO, then B=0 and A=0.

```
50 B$ = A = B
```

INVALID. This cannot be multiple assignment because the numeric value of B cannot be assigned to the string variable B\$; nor can this be a relational test for equality:
Does A = B?

If YES, then B\$=1;
Invalid
if NO, then B\$=0.

INPUT Statement

The INPUT statement allows you to enter data in a program while the program is running. The variables to be input are listed in the INPUT statement, separated by commas. When an INPUT statement is executed, a question mark (?) appears as a prompt on the display screen and the program waits for you to type your input data. If more than one data item is requested by a single INPUT statement, the items must be input separated by commas. When you have finished typing the input data, press the **RETURN** key. If you enter too many items, the message EXTRA IGNORED will be displayed in the message window. If you do not enter enough items, a double question mark (??) will be displayed as a prompt. You can then simply continue entering data.

If you enter string data when numeric data was requested, or numeric data when string data was requested in the INPUT list, the message "REDO FROM START" will be displayed. You must then re-enter all of the data items in the INPUT list.

Examples:

```
.      variable list →  
100 INPUT A  
110 INPUT C,D,$$  
. .  
RUN [RETURN]  
45 [RETURN]          A now equals 45.  
1,2,California [RETURN]    C equals 1, D equals 2, and S$  
                           equals California.
```

When data is read in, the input is taken from the line containing the cursor. All characters, including non-displaying control characters, to the right of the "?" prompt are input. This means that if additional characters are present on the input line, perhaps from some previous operation, they will also be input. These extra characters will probably result in an error.

Examples:

```
10 INPUT "Enter two numbers", A,B  
20 PRINT "Their sum is";A+B  
RUN [RETURN]  
Enter two numbers 2.5, 5 [RETURN]  
Their sum is 7.5  
  
5 INTEGER X,L  
10 INPUT "NO. OF COPIES?",X  
15 INPUT "NO. OF LINES?",L  
20 PRINT X; "COPIES AT ";L;" LINES EACH WILL BE ";X*L;" LINES."  
. .  
RUN [RETURN]  
NO. OF COPIES?30 [RETURN]  
NO. OF LINES?700 [RETURN]  
30 COPIES AT 700 LINES EACH WILL BE 21000 LINES.
```

An INPUT statement causes the variables in the variable list to be assigned, in order, to the values supplied from the terminal during execution of the program.

Numeric values must be supplied for numeric variables; any values are acceptable for string variables; numbers are read as ASCII characters. Numeric data is automatically converted to match the type of the variable to which it is assigned.

Example:

```
5 LONG S  
10 INPUT I,N$,S,L$  
20 PRINT "I=";I,"N$=";N$,"S=";S,"L$=";L$  
RUN [RETURN]  
2236, JIM SOBEL, 44, NEBRASKA [RETURN]  
I=2236   N$=JIM SOBEL   S=44   L$=NEBRASKA
```

Strings may either be quoted or unquoted when supplied for an INPUT statement. A quoted string may contain any printable ASCII characters except the quote mark itself. An unquoted string may contain any printable ASCII characters except a quote mark, or a comma. Leading blanks are ignored in an unquoted string. For example, using the same 3-line program listed above, respond to the input prompt as follows:

```
7, 6^6, 44, 00001 [RETURN]  
I=7   N$=6^6   S=44   L$=00001
```

In this case, 6^6 and 00001 are both unquoted strings.

You can have a message printed instead of the "?" prompt by adding a quoted text string as the first item in the INPUT list. This can be used to tell the user what kind of data is required. Also, if you wish to display no prompt at all, you can do so by entering a null string ("") as the quoted message.

Rather than respond to a program requesting input, you can enter the break character (normally Control-A) to interrupt (or terminate) the program.

LINPUT Statement

The LINPUT statement reads an entire line of input from the screen. When the LINPUT statement is executed, a question mark (?) is displayed on the display screen and the program waits for you to enter a line of characters. The line is then assigned to a specified string variable. Any ASCII character may be used including quotes and blanks.

Example:

```
    string  
    variable
```

```
40 LINPUT Name$
```

Reads a line of input and assigns it to the string variable Name\$.

```
50 LINPUT Code$(12,2)
```

Reads a line of input and assigns it to the subscripted string variable Code\$(12,2)

You may have a special prompt printed on the input device by inserting the prompt in quotes after the keyword LINPUT. The prompt and the string variable must be separated by a comma.

Example:

```
    prompt
```

```
70 LINPUT "Address: " , A$
```

Prints the prompt Address: on the terminal screen. When a line of characters is entered, those characters are assigned to A\$.

The string variable should be dimensioned large enough to accept the expected line of input.

If extra characters are entered, they are ignored (truncated). Sample Program

```
10 DIM A$(20), B$(5)
```

A\$ has a maximum length of 20 characters; B\$ has a maximum length of 5 characters.

```
20 LINPUT "Type 20 characters: " , A$
```

```
30 LINPUT "Type 5 characters: " , B$
```

```
40 PRINT A$
```

```
50 PRINT B$
```

RUN

```
Type 20 characters: 12345678901234567890 
```

```
Type 5 characters: 1234567890 
```

```
12345678901234567890
```

```
12345
```

The last five characters input for B\$ are ignored.

READ and DATA Statements

The READ statement reads data from DATA statements and assigns the data to variables in a variable list. The values in the variable list must be separated by commas.

Examples:

variable list →

```
10 READ A
```

Reads a new value for A.

```
20 READ N$
```

Reads a new value for N\$.

```
30 READ A,N$,T
```

Reads values for A,N\$, and T.

DATA statements contain both string and numeric data for the READ statements. The values in the data list must be separated by commas.

Examples:

data list →

```
40 DATA 10
```

Holds one numeric value, 10, or one string value, "10".

```
50 DATA "CALIFORNIA"
```

Holds one string value, "CALIFORNIA".

```
60 DATA 405,OREGON
```

Holds two values, one numeric (405) and one string ("OREGON") or two string values, "405" and "OREGON".

Strings in DATA statements may be quoted or unquoted except when the exclamation mark (!), comma (,), ASCII control character, or non-ASCII character is used. Leading spaces in an unquoted string are ignored. Because BASIC treats anything following an exclamation mark as a comment, to use an exclamation mark as part of a string in a DATA statement, the entire data item must be enclosed in quotes. The comma, ASCII control characters, and non-ASCII characters can also be used by surrounding them with quotes.

Example:

```
10 DATA 53, HELLO, GOODBYE !THIS IS A COMMENT  
20 DATA 53, HELLO, GOODBYE,!THIS IS NOT A COMMENT"
```

Statement 10 contains three data items: 53, "HELLO", and "GOODBYE"; statement 20 contains a fourth item, the string "!THIS IS NOT A COMMENT".

Interaction Between READ and DATA Statements

DATA statements may appear anywhere in a program. They need not come before or after the READ statement that references them. All of the data from every DATA statement in a program is linked together to form a single data list which acts effectively as an extended DATA statement. READ statements read data starting at the beginning of this extended DATA statement.

At the beginning of program execution, the data pointer is set to the beginning of the program. The first READ statement reads one data item for each variable in the read list. As data items are assigned, the pointer is advanced through the data list. The next READ statement begins reading data where the previous READ statement left off. It is important to have enough data in DATA statements to supply all the variables in READ statements, otherwise an OUT OF DATA message will be printed and the program will halt. Extra data is ignored.

When DATA statements are used in subprograms, each subprogram maintains its own data pointer. This means that a READ statement in the main program or subprogram will only affect the data pointer in its own program unit. The data pointer for a subprogram is reset to the first data item each time the subprogram is entered. Additional information on subprograms is given in Section 8.

The following examples illustrate how READ and DATA statements work.

Examples:

```
10 DATA 3,5,7
20 READ A,B,C
30 PRINT A;B;C
```

RUN

3 5 7

```
5 INTEGER A,C
10 DATA 100
20 DATA FLORIDA
30 DATA 300
40 READ A,B$,C
50 PRINT A,B$,C
60 READ D
```

RUN

```
100            FLORIDA
END OF DATA IN LINE 60
```

300 There is no data left for the variable D.

It is also important that each variable in the READ statement be the same type as the corresponding value in the data list. Any data is valid for a string variable; only numeric data is valid for numeric variables.

```
5 SHORT A
10 DATA "1.0E20"
20 READ A
30 PRINT A
```

RUN

A is a numeric variable, but the only data item is a string.

TYPE MISMATCH IN LINE 20

```
5 LONG A
10 DATA 1.0E20,1.0E20
20 READ A,A$
30 PRINT A,A$
```

RUN

1E+20 1.0E20

The two data items appear identical, however, the first is read as a number and the second as a string of six characters.

RESTORE Statement

The RESTORE statement is used to select the DATA statement that is to be read by the next READ statement. In its simpler form, the RESTORE statement causes the next data read to be the first value of the first DATA statement in the program. The RESTORE statement restores or resets a pointer to the next data item to be read by BASIC. It affects only the data input using the READ statement. The pointer position is unchanged by INPUT, LINPUT, LINPUT #, or READ # statements.

The RESTORE statement allows you to reread the same set of data over and over again. It can also be used to change the order in which DATA statements are accessed. You can select the DATA statement to be used depending on a test made by your program.

Example:

```
5 INTEGER A,B,C,D,X,Y,Z
10 DATA 1,2
20 DATA 3,4
30 READ A,B,C,D
```

Statement 30 starts reading at statement 10.

```
40 RESTORE
50 READ X,Y,Z
```

Statement 50 starts reading at statement 10. If statement 40 were omitted, statement 50 would cause an END OF DATA error.

```
60 PRINT A;B;C;D;X;Y;Z
```

RUN

1 2 3 4 1 2 3

Optionally you can specify a DATA statement line number so that the next READ statement starts reading at the first data item of the specified DATA statement. If the line number referenced in the RESTORE statement is not a DATA statement, the data pointer is advanced to the next DATA statement in the program.

Example:

```
5 INTEGER A,B,C,D,E,F,G
10 DATA 1,2
20 DATA 3,4
30 DATA 5,6
40 READ A,B,C
```

Statement 40 starts reading at statement 10.

```
50 RESTORE 20
60 READ D
```

Statement 60 starts reading at statement 20.

```
70 RESTORE 10
80 READ E,F,G
```

Statement 80 starts reading at statement 10.

```
90 PRINT A;B;C;D;E;F;G
```

RUN

1 2 3 3 1 2 3

Notice that in this example the statement

```
70 RESTORE 10
```

is equivalent to

```
70 RESTORE
```

because statement 10 is the first DATA statement in the program.

A general program can be used and new data can be supplied each time the program is run. This can be done by simply typing in new data statements. In the following program, statements 100 and 110 contain the data.

Example:

```
10 REM Average 6 numbers
20 FOR I=1 TO 6
30 READ N
40 S=S+N
50 NEXT I
60 PRINT "Average is ";S/6
70 RESTORE
80 READ A,B,C
90 PRINT "Average of the first 3 numbers is ";(A+B+C)/3
100 DATA 5.5,3.46,52
110 DATA 77.3,.89,50

>RUN [RETURN]
Average is 31.525
Average of the first 3 numbers is 20.32
```

New data can be added as follows:

```
>100 DATA 17.6,.009,305.67
>110 DATA 59.75,175.6,33.59
```

When executed the following averages will be calculated:

```
>RUN [RETURN]

Average is 98.7032
Average of the first 3 numbers is 107.76
>
```

PRINT Statement

The PRINT statement is used to display the results of a program. Normally, results are displayed on the screen. If you want to have data printed on another device, such as a line printer or tape, you must use the ASSIGN and PRINT # statements described later in this manual.

Examples:

```
10 PRINT           ! Prints a blank line.

20 PRINT A,B       ! Prints the value of A, then the value of B.

30 PRINT A*B/6     ! Prints the value of the expression A*B/6.

40 PRINT "HELLO";N$ ! Prints HELLO followed by the value of N$.
```

The results to be displayed are specified in a print list. The print list consists of expressions separated by commas or semicolons. The items in the print list are printed in order from left to right.

When a comma separates two expressions, their values are printed spaced across the screen (or page) in fields of 15 spaces each. When an item is longer than 15 characters the extra characters are printed in the next field. Each line of output has five 15 character fields.

When a semicolon separates two expressions in the print list, the values are printed immediately adjacent to each other on the output device. Print list items can be formatted to output data in almost any configuration. Refer to the PRINT USING and PRINT # USING statements for additional information (Section 5).

Numbers are always printed with one trailing blank. Positive numbers are printed with a leading blank.

Sample Program

```
10 PRINT "THIS","LINE","USES","COMMAS"
20 PRINT "THIS";"LINE";"USES";"SEMI-COLONS"
30 PRINT "THIS ";"LINE ";"ALSO ";"USES ";"SEMI-COLONS"
40 PRINT "SEMICOLONS";1;2;3
50 PRINT "COMMAS",1,2,3

RUN [RETURN]

      THIS          LINE          USES          COMMAS
THISLINEUSESSEMI-COLONS
THIS LINE ALSO USES SEMI-COLONS
SEMICOLONS 1 2 3
COMMAS       1           2           3
```

If there is not enough space to print all the items on one line, remaining items are printed on the following line.

```
10 PRINT "USING ";"SEMIS ";"THIS ";"LINE ";"FITS ";"ON ";"ONE ";"LINE"
20 PRINT "USING ","COMMAS ", "THIS ","LINE ","WILL ","NOT ","FIT"

RUN [RETURN]

      USING SEMIS THIS LINE FITS ON ONE LINE
      USING          COMMAS          THIS          LINE          WILL
      NOT           FIT
      THIS LINE ALSO USES SEMI-COLONS
      SEMICOLONS 1 2 3
      COMMAS       1           2           3
```

If the last character in a PRINT statement is a comma or a semicolon, the next PRINT statement continues printing on that same line. Otherwise, the next PRINT statement begins a new line.

Sample Program

```
10 PRINT 1,2,3,
20 PRINT 4,5,6
30 PRINT 7,8,9;
40 PRINT 10,11,12

RUN [RETURN]

      1           2           3           4           5
      6           7           8           9 10        11        12
```

Print Functions

Any of the following print functions can be included in a print list to control the format of a program's output:

- TAB
- SPA
- LIN

A print function is used in the print list just like a print list item. Print functions can be used only in the PRINT statement. They cannot be used in IMAGE or PRINT USING statements or in format specifications. (Refer to Section 5 for additional information on formatting output.)

In addition to the TAB, SPA, and LIN functions there are several special terminal functions that allow you to position the cursor. These MOVC functions are not present in most BASIC interpreters and can only be used with the terminal's display. The MOVC functions are described in Section 10.

TAB(X) - The TAB function prints spaces up to column X. X must be a positive number or a numeric expression that can be evaluated and then rounded to a positive integer between 0 and 80. Values between 81 and 255 will be reduced to 80 if the TAB function is used in a PRINT statement. If used in a PRINT # statement the limit for X is 255. Values greater than 255 or less than 0 will result in an error.

Example:

```
10 PRINT TAB(2S); "Mr. Ben Friedlander"
```

RUN **RETURN**

Mr. Ben Friedlander

```
10 PRINT TAB(90); "Mr. Ben Friedlander"  
20 PRINT TAB(180); "Mr. Ben Friedlander"
```

RUN **RETURN**

r. Ben Friedlander

M

r. Ben Friedlander

M

If the value of X is less than the current print position, the TAB function is ignored.

SPA(X) - Blanks are printed for the number of spaces indicated by the numeric expression X. If the number of spaces will not fit on the current line, the remaining spaces are sent to the beginning of the next line. For example, 10 PRINT A; SPA(10); B prints the value of A, prints 10 additional blanks and then prints the value of B.

Example:

```
S REM: This program prints a 20 by 20 asterisk box  
10 PRINT *****  
20 FOR I = 1 TO 18  
30 PRINT "*"; SPA(18); "*"  
40 NEXT I  
50 PRINT *****
```

RUN **RETURN**

```
*****  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*  
*****  
>
```

LIN(X) - The number of lines specified by the numeric expression X are advanced and the print position returns to the left margin. If X is negative, then ABS(X) lines are advanced but the horizontal print position remains the same (the column remains the same instead of returning to the left margin). Note that +0 and -0 both result in a carriage return with no line feed.

Examples:

```
10 LET S$ = "SAN FRANCISCO"  
20 PRINT S$, LIN(1), S$, LIN(-1), S$, LIN(-10), S$
```

RUN **RETURN**

```
SAN FRANCISCO  
SAN FRANCISCO  
SAN FRANCISCO
```

SAN FRANCISCO

A typical use of the three print functions is to provide header information for a report:

```
40 PRINT TAB(10), "SUMMARY REPORT", SPA(15), "PAGE 1"  
50 PRINT LIN(3), "DETAIL LINES"
```

You can specify more or fewer digits, or delete the trailing spaces after numbers, or otherwise overcome print conventions with the PRINT USING statement and the IMAGE statement. Refer to Section 5 for the discussions of these statements and for more information on formatted output.

GOTO and ON...GOTO STATEMENTS

The GOTO and ON...GOTO statements are used to override the normal sequential order of processing statements by transferring control to a specified line number. The GOTO statement can transfer control (branch) to a single line number.

The ON<expression>GOTO<linelist> form of the GOTO statement allows you to branch to one of several line numbers. When the statement is executed, the expression (which must be numeric) is evaluated and rounded to an integer. This integer is used to select one of the line numbers from the line list. A "1" selects the first line number in the line list, a "2" selects the second line number, and so on. If the expression evaluates to less than one or to greater than the number of lines in the line list, control passes to the statement following the ON GOTO statement.

Examples:

label list →
100 GOTO 10

Transfers control to line number 10.

110 GOTO 20

Transfers control to line number 20.

expression →
120 ON A*B GOTO 60,50,75

This is called a "computed GOTO". The expression A*B is evaluated and rounded to the nearest integer. If the resulting value is 1, control is transferred to line number 60; if the value of A*B is 2, control is transferred to line number 50; if the value is 3, control is transferred to line number 75. If the value of the expression is less than 1 or greater than the number of items in the line list, then processing continues with the following line.

This example shows a simple GOTO in line 200 and a multi-branch, or computed GOTO in line 600.

```
100 LET I = 0
200 GOTO 600
300 PRINT I
400 REMARK THE VALUE OF I IS ZERO
500 LET I = I+1
600 ON I+1 GOTO 300,500,800
700 REM THE FINAL VALUE OF I IS 2
800 PRINT I
```

This program prints the initial value of I (0) and the final value of I (2).

If the GOTO statement references a non-existent line number, an error will be displayed, and the program will halt. If the GOTO statement references a non-executable statement such as REM, execution will continue with the statement following the non-executable statement.

Sample Program

```
10 FOR I=0 TO 5 STEP .4
20 PRINT "I=";I;
30 ON I GOTO 60,70,80
35 PRINT "I is too large or too small"
40 NEXT I
50 END
60 PRINT " Went to 1"\GOTO 40
70 PRINT " Went to 2"\GOTO 40
80 PRINT " Went to 3"\GOTO 40
>RUN [RETURN]
```

I= 0 I is too large or too small
I= .4 I is too large or too small
I= .8 Went to 1
I= 1.2 Went to 1
I= 1.6 Went to 2
I= 2 Went to 2
I= 2.4 Went to 2
I= 2.8 Went to 3
I= 3.2 Went to 3
I= 3.6 I is too large or too small
I= 4 I is too large or too small
I= 4.4 I is too large or too small
I= 4.8 I is too large or too small

IF...THEN...ELSE Statement

The IF...THEN statement allows you to branch on a condition. When an IF...THEN statement is executed, a logical expression is tested. If the expression is TRUE (non-zero), the program transfers control to a statement specified by the line number or executes the specified statement.

Examples:

expression →
20 IF A = B THEN 10 label →
If the expression A=B is TRUE, then control passes to statement 10.

30 IF A-B+C THEN A=B statement →
If the expression A-B+C is TRUE, then the value of B is assigned to A. (Note: A-B+C is a logical expression. See Section 3.)

40 IF A THEN PRINT B If A is TRUE, then the value of B is printed.

If the expression following IF is FALSE, control passes to the next sequential statement and the statement following THEN is ignored.

The IF...THEN...ELSE form of the statement allows you to select alternate statements based on a condition. If the condition is true, the statement following THEN is executed. If the condition is false, the statement following ELSE is executed.

All statements following the IF...THEN statement in the line are assumed to be a part of the IF...THEN statement or its conditions. A multiple statement following the THEN will be executed only if the condition is true. A multiple statement following the ELSE will be executed only if the condition is false.

Example:

```
10 IF A+1>3 THEN PRINT 10 Y=2 ELSE PRINT 20 X=3
40 PRINT "DONE"
```

will execute as if it were written as follows:

```
10 IF A+1>3 THEN 30
20 PRINT 20 \ X=3 \ GOTO 40
30 PRINT 10 \ Y=2
40 PRINT "DONE"
```

The following BASIC statements should not be used in the THEN or ELSE part of an IF statement:

DATA REM SUBEND
IMAGE SUB type declaration statements

The SUB statement will cause a program error and the others may produce unanticipated results elsewhere in the program.

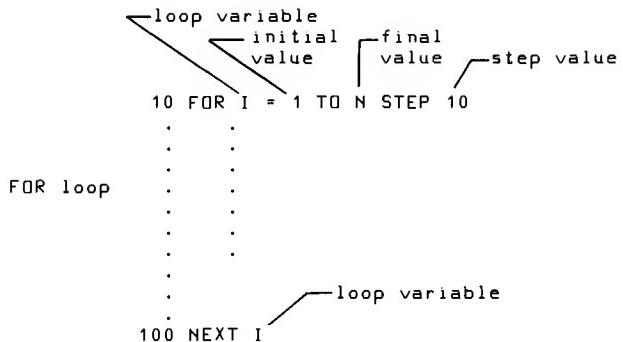
Example:

```
10 INTEGER Hours,Over
20 LONG Pay
.
.
.
100 INPUT "Hours worked?";Hours
110 IF Hours >40 THEN 300
120 IF Hours = 0 THEN 330
130 PRINT "NO OVERTIME RETURNED"
140 GOTO 100
.
.
.
300 Over = Hours - 40
310 PRINT "OVERTIME PAY ="; Over*Pay*1.5
320 GOTO 100
330 REM - continue program
```

FOR and NEXT Statements

The FOR and NEXT statements allow you to cause a section of your program to execute more than once. The FOR statement indicates the beginning of the group of statements that is to be repeated and the number of times to repeat that group. The NEXT statement indicates the end of the group. A group of statements bounded by a FOR statement and its corresponding NEXT statement is called a FOR loop. Although the IF and GOTO statements can usually be used to perform the same type of looping as the FOR and NEXT statements, the FOR and NEXT statements are normally easier to use and understand.

The start, end, and step size values can be expressions.



The FOR statement and the corresponding NEXT statement are linked together by the loop variable. The loop variable must be a SHORT or INTEGER simple variable. When the FOR loop is first executed, the loop variable is set to an initial value. The loop is then executed. At the end of the FOR loop, the loop variable is modified by a step value and the value of the loop variable is tested against the final value. The FOR loop repeats until the value of the loop variable exceeds the final value. When the step value is negative, the loop terminates when the loop variable is less than the final value.

Note that the FOR loop is always executed at least once.

In the example above, the loop variable is I, and the initial value of the loop variable is 1. After each execution of the FOR loop, the value of the loop variable I is incremented by the step value of 10. When the value of I becomes greater than the final value, N, execution of the FOR loop ends. If N is less than the initial value, 1, the FOR loop executes only once.

Example:

```
10 FOR J=N TO 1 STEP -1  
.  
.  
.  
.  
.  
100 NEXT J
```

In this example, the loop variable is being decremented, so execution of the FOR loop ceases when the loop variable J becomes less than 1.

The initial value, final value, and step value can be any valid numeric expressions. When the FOR loop is first encountered during program execution, the initial value, final value, and step value are calculated and those values are used throughout the execution of the FOR loop. For example, assume that Y=10. The following FOR loop will execute 10 times, not 20 times.

```
100 FOR I=1 TO Y STEP 1
110 Y=20
120 NEXT I
```

The value of the loop variable, however, can be changed inside the loop. The following FOR loop will execute 1 time, not 10.

```
100 FOR I=1 TO 10 STEP 1
110 I=10
120 NEXT I
```

The step value may be omitted in which case it is assumed to be 1. For instance, the statement

```
100 FOR I=1 TO 10 STEP 1
```

is equivalent to

```
100 FOR I=1 TO 10
```

The following program uses a FOR...NEXT loop to calculate and print cumulative savings over a 10 year period on an initial deposit of \$1000 at 4-1/2% interest compounded annually.

Sample Program

```
20 LONG T,D
30 I=.04S
40 T,D=1000
50 FOR Y=1 TO 10
60 T=I*T+T
70 PRINT "AFTER";Y;"YEAR(S), TOTAL = ";T
80 NEXT Y
```

RUN

```
AFTER 1 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1044.999998062849
AFTER 2 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1092.024995951355
AFTER 3 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1141.166118653748
AFTER 4 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1192.518591782556
AFTER 5 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1246.181926102682
AFTER 6 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1302.260110363261
AFTER 7 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1360.861812806933
AFTER 8 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1422.10059174705
AFTER 9 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1486.095115620844
AFTER 10 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1552.969392944991
>
```

Multiple Loops

It is possible to have more than one FOR loop in a program. If this is the case, the FOR loops must either be disjoint (completely separated) or one must be nested within the other. Following is an example of two disjoint FOR loops.

Sample Program

```
10 FOR I=1 TO 5
20 PRINT I;
30 NEXT I
40 FOR I=10 TO 100 STEP 20
50 PRINT I;
60 NEXT I
```

RUN

1	2	3	4	5	10	30	50	70	90
---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----

Notice that the variable I is the loop variable in both of the above FOR loops. When FOR loops are disjoint, identical loop variables may be used. This next example shows a nested FOR loop.

Sample Program

```
10 FOR I=1 TO 5
20 FOR J=10 TO 100 STEP 20
30 PRINT I;J;
40 NEXT J
45 PRINT
50 NEXT I
```

RUN

1	10	1	30	1	50	1	70	1	90
2	10	2	30	2	50	2	70	2	90
3	10	3	30	3	50	3	70	3	90
4	10	4	30	4	50	4	70	4	90
5	10	5	30	5	50	5	70	5	90

When FOR loops are nested one within the other, different loop variables must be used. The J FOR loop here is nested within the I FOR loop.

FOR loops that overlap are not permitted. The following is an example of an overlapping FOR loop.

INVALID { 10 FOR I=1 TO 10
20 FOR J=10 TO 100
30 PRINT I
40 NEXT I
50 PRINT J
60 NEXT J

The J FOR loop begins inside the I FOR loop but ends outside the I FOR loop, so the J FOR loop overlaps the I FOR loop.

The following program uses multiple loops to calculate and print the cumulative savings over a 10 year period on initial deposits of \$100 to \$1000 at 4-1/2% interest per year.

Sample Program

```

10 LET I=.045
20 FOR D=100 TO 1000 STEP 100
30 PRINT "FOR AN INITIAL DEPOSIT OF $">D
40 LET T=D
50 FOR Y=1 TO 10
60 LET T=T*I*T
70 PRINT "AFTER";Y;"YEAR(S), TOTAL =";T
80 NEXT Y
90 NEXT D

RUN 
FOR AN INITIAL DEPOSIT OF $ 100
AFTER 1 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 104.5
AFTER 2 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 109.203
AFTER 3 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 114.117
AFTER 4 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 119.252
AFTER 5 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 124.618
AFTER 6 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 130.226
AFTER 7 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 136.086
AFTER 8 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 142.21
AFTER 9 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 148.61
AFTER 10 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 155.297
.

FOR AN INITIAL DEPOSIT OF $ 1000
AFTER 1 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1045
AFTER 2 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1092.03
AFTER 3 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1141.17
AFTER 4 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1192.52
AFTER 5 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1246.18
AFTER 6 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1302.26
AFTER 7 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1360.86
AFTER 8 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1422.1
AFTER 9 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1486.1
AFTER 10 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1552.97
>

```

FOR Loop Cautions

FOR loops must always be entered from the top of the loop, that is, starting with the FOR statement. Never write a program that contains a statement which branches into the middle of a FOR loop. You may begin a FOR loop, branch out of the loop, and come back. However, if you do you must be sure that the loop variable has not been modified outside of the loop. If it has, it will affect the operation of the loop. A clever programmer may wish to take advantage of this feature, but it is extremely difficult to debug clever programs.

For instance, in the following example, the loop variable is I and there is also a variable I outside the loop at statement 200. Statement 200 will cause the program to loop indefinitely.

Example:

```

.
.
40 LET K=3
50 FOR I=1 TO 10
60 IF I=K THEN 200

```

When I becomes 3, branch to statement 200. Statement 200 changes the value of I to 2 then the program branches back to statement 70. The value of I becomes 3, statement 60 branches to statement 200 and the cycle repeats ... and repeats ... and repeats ...

```

70 NEXT I
80 STOP
.
.
200 LET I=I-1
210 GOTO 70
.
.

```

The best approach is to reserve loop variables for use within the loops only, and not reference these variables outside of the loop.

You can terminate a FOR loop by branching out of the loop with a transfer statement such as GOTO or IF...THEN. For example, the following program is terminated as soon as the value of T is greater than or equal to 1000. This program finds the smallest amount, in multiples of \$100, that must be deposited if a person wants to have \$1000 within 10 years.

Sample Program

```

10 LET I=.045
20 FOR D=100 TO 1000 STEP 100
30 LET T=D
40 FOR Y=1 TO 10
50 LET T=T*I*T
60 IF T>=1000 THEN 85
70 NEXT Y
80 NEXT D
85 PRINT "FOR AN INITIAL DEPOSIT OF ">D
90 PRINT "AFTER";Y;"YEAR(S), TOTAL =";T

```

RUN 

```

FOR AN INITIAL DEPOSIT OF .....
.
.
AFTER 9 YEAR(S), TOTAL = 1040.26

```

When you are using FOR loops, be careful to avoid endless loops. An endless loop occurs when a statement within the FOR loop causes the value of the loop variable to always be smaller than the final value. The following is an example of a FOR loop that will never end.

```

10 FOR X=1 TO 10
20 X=1
30 NEXT X

```

X is always reset to 1 in statement 20, so the loop will never end.

GOSUB and RETURN Statements

You may want to perform the same sequence of instructions in many different places within the same program. Instead of typing this block of statements every time you want to use it, you can write it once as a subroutine and use GOSUB statements to call the subroutine whenever you need it. (For a long sequence of instructions, you should write a subprogram. See Section 8.) Figure 4-1 illustrates the general structure of a program with a subroutine.

Since BASIC subroutines are simply a collection of statements, it is a good idea to place them where they will not be executed accidentally. If you place a subroutine in the middle of your program for example, you will need to use a GOTO statement or some other technique to route the execution of your program around the subroutine. It is also helpful to clearly describe the purpose of the subroutine together with any parameters in REM statements at the beginning of the subroutine. If the RETURN statement is not the last statement in the subroutine it is also helpful to indicate the last statement of the subroutine with a comment or remark.

```
10 .
20 .
30 .
40 .
50 GOSUB 200    line number corresponding
                  to first statement of subroutine.

.
90 GOSUB 200
.
.
.
140 GOSUB 200
.
.
.
190 GOTO 310
200
.
.
.
subroutine{.
.
.
300 RETURN
310
```

Figure 4-1. Structure of a Program with a Subroutine

The GOSUB statement specifies the line number of the first statement of the subroutine. The RETURN statement indicates the end of the subroutine. When a subroutine is finished processing, control returns to the first statement following the GOSUB statement. Note that the subroutine in Figure 4-1 is preceded by a GOTO statement; a subroutine should only be entered with GOSUB statements.

Example:

```
.
.
.
40 GOSUB 500    Transfers to subroutine at
                  statement 500.

50 ....
.
.
.
500 REM:BEGIN SUBROUTINE
.
.
.
590 RETURN        Transfers to statement 50
                  (the first statement following
                  the GOSUB statement).
```

The following program asks for the time of day. It uses a subroutine to input the data values and to check if they are valid. Note that the values used to check for valid input are different for hours and minutes and are set before entering the subroutine.

```
10 REM ...Set hour limit
12 Ulimit=23
14 PRINT "Enter Hour of Day"
16 GOSUB 44
18 Hours=R
20 REM ...Set min/sec limit
22 Ulimit=59
24 PRINT "Enter minutes"
26 GOSUB 44
28 Minutes=R
30 PRINT "Enter seconds"
32 GOSUB 44
34 Seconds=R
36 PRINT "Hours=";Hours;"Minutes=";Minutes,
38 PRINT "Seconds=";Seconds
40 END
42 REM .....
44 REM ...Input/checking subroutine.....
46 REM .....
48 INPUT R
50 IF R<0 OR R>Ulimit THEN 54
52 RETURN
54 PRINT "Impossible value, enter another value"
56 GOTO 48
58 REM ...End of Subroutine.....
.
>RUN RETURN
Enter Hour of Day
? 25
Impossible value, enter another value
? 12
Enter minutes
? 70
Impossible value, enter another value
? 1
Enter seconds
? 33
Hours= 12      Minutes= 1      Seconds= 33
>
```

A subroutine can be recursive; that is, it can call itself. When you use a recursive subroutine be sure to include some way to end the recursion. This is called nesting. When a RETURN is executed, it transfers control to the statement following the last executed GOSUB. Care should be taken when nesting subroutines since you will not return to the statement following the first executed GOSUB until all of the intervening RETURN statements have been executed. You can always use GOTO or IF statements to transfer into or out of a subroutine at any point.

```

10 INTEGER N
15 Nfactorial=1
20 INPUT N
25 IF N>0 THEN 40
30 PRINT "Enter a value greater than 0"
35 GOTO 20
40 GOSUB 55
45 PRINT "N Factorial =";Nfactorial
50 GOTO 15
55 REM Factorial Routine
60 Nfactorial=Nfactorial*N
65 N=N-1
70 ON N>1 GOSUB 55
75 RETURN

```

RUN **RETURN**

```

? 1
N Factorial = 1
? 2
N Factorial = 2
? 5
N Factorial = 120
? 4
N Factorial = 24
? 3
N Factorial = 6
.
.
.
```

ON...GOSUB Statement

You can select one of several subroutines in the same manner as the ON...GOTO statement described earlier. When the ON <expression> GOSUB <line list form of the statement is used, the numeric expression is evaluated and rounded to an integer to select a line number from the line list. If the expression evaluates to less than one or to a value greater than the number of lines in the line list, the next statement following the ON...GOSUB statement will be executed.

Example:

<i>expression</i>	<i>statement labels</i>
$\overbrace{10 \text{ ON } X + Y/3}$	$\overbrace{\text{GOSUB } 100,500,300,40,100}$

The expression is evaluated and rounded to the nearest integer. If the resulting value is 1, control is transferred to statement 100; if the value is 2, control is transferred to statement 500; etc.

If the expression evaluates to less than 1, or to greater than the number of line numbers specified, control passes to the statement following the ON...GOSUB. When a RETURN statement is executed, control returns to the statement following the ON...GOSUB statement.

Sample Program

```

10 FOR X=0 TO 2
20 ON X+1 GOSUB 200,300,400
30 NEXT X
100 REM...CONTROL WILL REACH HERE ONLY WHEN THE
105 REM...FOR LOOP IS FINISHED
110 PRINT "FOR LOOP IS FINISHED"
120 STOP
200 PRINT X;SIN(X)
210 RETURN
300 PRINT X;2*X;COS(X)
310 RETURN
400 PRINT X;3*X;TAN(X)
410 RETURN
500 END

RUN RETURN

0   0
1   2 .5403022
2   6 -2.185034
FOR LOOP IS FINISHED

```

In-Line Subroutine Nesting

A transfer to another statement may occur within the block of statements constituting a subroutine. For instance, in the following program, the subroutine beginning at statement 50 contains a statement (90) that transfers control to another subroutine.

Sample Program

```

10 INPUT X
20 ON SGN(X)+2 GOSUB 50,120,170
30 GOTO 10
40 REM ****
50 REM X<0
60 REM
70 PRINT "X NEGATIVE"
80 LET X=-X
90 GOSUB 170
100 RETURN
110 REM ****
120 REM X=0
130 REM
140 PRINT "X=0"
150 RETURN
160 REM ****
170 REM X>0
180 REM
190 PRINT "Square Root =";SQR(X)
200 RETURN

RUN RETURN

```

```

? 4
Square Root = 2
? 3
Square Root = 1.73205
? 2
Square Root = 1.41421
? 16
Square Root = 4
? 36
Square Root = 6
?
.
.
.
```

STOP and END

The STOP and END statements are used to terminate a program. If a program contains a subprogram (see Section 8), the END statement must precede the first subprogram. STOP statements may appear anywhere in a program. When a program halts as a result of a STOP statement, the effect is the same as that of a program BREAK. The program can be resumed by entering the GO command. Execution continues with the statement following the STOP statement that was used to halt the program.

Examples:

```
10 INPUT A  
20 IF A=0 THEN STOP
```

Statement 20 causes this program to stop when a 0 is input for A.

```
30 PRINT A,.065*A  
40 GOTO 10
```

```
10 INPUT A  
20 IF A=0 THEN GOTO 50
```

When a 0 is input for A in this program, statement 20 passes control to statement 50 and the program terminates.

```
30 PRINT A,.065*A  
40 GOTO 10  
50 END
```

Sample Program

```
10 REM: This program asks for a name and address,  
20 REM: then prints it out in mailing format.  
30 DIM Name$(30),Street$(30),City$(20),Zip$(5)  
40 PRINT "Please type the name. Type an X to stop."  
50 INPUT Name$  
60 IF (Name$="X" OR Name$="x") THEN 140  
70 PRINT "Now type the street address, city, and zip code."  
80 PRINT "Separate them with commas.";LIN(1)  
90 INPUT Street$,City$,Zip$  
100 PRINT SPA(20),Name$  
110 PRINT SPA(20),Street$  
120 PRINT SPA(20),City$;", California ";Zip$;LIN(1)  
130 GOTO 40  
140 END  
  
>RUN [RETURN]  
Please type the name. Type an X to stop.  
? Mary Ann Dullette  
Now type the street address, city, and zip code.  
Separate them with commas.  
  
? 1 Grove Place,Cupertino,99999  
Mary Ann Dullette  
1 Grove Place  
Cupertino, California 99999  
  
Please type the name. Type an X to stop.  
? x  
>
```


Formatted Output

SECTION

v

Some programs require output to be printed in a complex format. The PRINT USING and IMAGE statements allow you to specify, with more flexibility than the simple PRINT statement, the format in which program results will be displayed or printed.

Recall from Section 4 that in the PRINT statement:

- When commas are used as item separators, results are printed in evenly spaced fields across the screen or page.
 - When semicolons are used as item separators, results are printed close together.
 - Each numeric value is printed with a leading blank if positive, and a trailing blank.
 - The TAB function moves the print position to a specified column.
 - The LIN function generates a specified number of blank lines.
 - The SPA function moves the print position a specified number of columns to the right.

PRINT USING and IMAGE Statements

The **PRINT USING** statement extends your control of the output format to include the following capabilities:

- You can eliminate leading and trailing blanks in numeric output.
 - You can insert periods and commas in numeric output.
 - You can specify placement of plus and minus signs.
 - You can designate precisely where on the page (screen) you want each data item printed.

The PRINT USING statement consists of a list of items to be printed (the print list) and a format string that describes how these items are to be printed. The format string is separated from the print list by a semicolon. The format string can be specified in one of four ways as illustrated in the following examples and explained below:

Examples:

- A. The format string is included in the PRINT USING statement:

format string print list
20 PRINT USING "3A,3X,2D,2X,4D"; A\$, B, C

- B. The format string is represented by a string variable in the PRINT USING statement:

```
format string
10 P$="3A,3X,2D,2X,4D"
      string variable
      print list
20 PRINT USING P$;A$,B,C
```

- C. The format string is specified in an IMAGE statement. The PRINT USING statement references the IMAGE statement line number:

IMAGE statement

```

    label      print list
    |           |
20 PRINT USING 30;A$,B,C
                    |
                    format string
                    |
30 IMAGE 3A,3X,2D,2X,4D
                    |
                    format specification
  
```

Note that the IMAGE statement does not use quote marks around the format specification. Also the IMAGE statement must be the only statement used in the line.

Sample Program

```
5 INTEGER Day,Year  
10 INPUT Weekday$, Month$, Day, Year  
20 PRINT Weekday$, Month$, Day, Year  
30 PRINT Weekday$, Month$; Day, Year  
40 PRINT SPA(19); Weekday$, LIN(1); TAB(50);Month$;Day,SPA(3);Year
```

RUN **RETURN**

Monday, March, 13, 1978 Monday March 13 1978 1978
Monday March 13 1978
Monday March 13 1978

D. The format string is represented by a string expression in the PRINT USING statement:

```
10 DIM A$(80)
20 A$="THIS IS HOW YOU GET A"
30 PRINT USING "22A"&CHR$(34)&"QUOTED LITERAL"&CHR$(34);A$
run RETURN
```

THIS IS HOW YOU GET A "QUOTED LITERAL"

The print list can include quoted strings, variables, and expressions. In the first three examples, the print list includes three variables: A\$, B, and C. The items in the print list are separated by commas or semicolons. The commas and semicolons in PRINT USING statements are interpreted only as item separators and do not affect the format of the output.

Format Symbols

A format consists of a series of format symbols. The format symbols specify how each item in the print list is to be formatted and how the items are to be arranged on the page. Commas separate individual format specifications in the format string. The five specifications in the format string "3A,3X,2D,2X,4D" indicate that the values of A\$, B, and C are to be printed as three ASCII characters (3A) followed by three blank spaces (3X), two decimal digits (2D), two more blank spaces (2X), and four more decimal digits (4D). There must be a format specification for every variable in the print list. Additional specifications may be used to insert spaces and control carriage returns and linefeeds.

Sample program:

```
10 INTEGER B,C
20 LET A$ = "JUNE"
30 LET B=14
40 C=1976
50 PRINT USING 60;A$,B,C
60 IMAGE 4X,4A,2X,2D,2X,4D
```

RUN RETURN

JUNE 14 1976

The first step in preparing formatted output is usually to make a sketch of how you want the results arranged on the page or screen. Then build the format string using the symbols presented in Table 5-1. The following pages describe how these symbols are used to format string and numeric output.

Separators

Three symbols are used to separate specifications:

- , A comma is used only to separate two specifications.
- / A slash separates two specifications and begins a new line if writing to a lineprinter or a new record if writing to a file.
- @ The @ sign separates two specifications and, on lineprinter output, begins a new page.

Table 5-1 Format Symbols

Symbol	Description	Example
Strings		
A	ASCII Character	AAA
K	Compressed format	K
Blanks		
X	Blank space	XXX
Separators		
,	Separator only	AA,DD
/	Separates specifications and begins a new line or a new record if writing to a file.	AA/DD
@	Separates specifications and, on lineprinter output, begins a new page.	AA@DD
Carriage Control	Characters (used at the end of the print list)	
+	Suppress linefeed	
-	Suppress carriage return	
#	Suppress both linefeed and carriage return	
Replicators		
n	Single replicator	3A
n()	Group replicator	3(3A,2X)
Numeric Specifications		
S	Sign character (+ or -)	SDD
M	Minus sign	MDD
D	Numeric digit, blank fill	DDD
.	Decimal point (.)	DDD.DD
R	European Decimal point (,)	DDDRDDD
C	Comma	DDCDDD
P	Period (European comma)	DDPDDD
K	Compressed format	"ONLY",XKX, "ITEMS"

/ and @ can also be used as specifications by themselves; that is, they can be separated from other specifications by a comma. Only the / can be directly replicated, however, as explained later.

Literal Specifications

Literal specifications can be included in the format specification in two ways:

- nX specifies n blank spaces (x specifies a single blank).
- " " can be used to enclose any ASCII data.

Literal specifications can be used with format specifications for any print list item. You should not use commas to separate literal specifications from other specifications for a given print list item. This is because output for the PRINT USING statement is terminated by the end of the print list or a separator in the format specification.

Examples:

```
10 A=5
20 PRINT USING 40;A
30 PRINT USING 50;A
40 IMAGE "LIST OF", DD, " ITEMS"
50 IMAGE "LIST OF" DD " ITEMS"
```

run RETURN

```
LIST OF 5
LIST OF 5 ITEMS
```

Formatting Strings

Strings can be specified in two ways:

“ ” A literal specification is a string enclosed in quotes. Literals may be included in any specification.

A The character A is used to specify a single string character. nA specifies n characters.

Examples:

Each of these sequences causes the same output:

```
30 Res$ = "RESTART"
40 IMAGE ****"4X7A4X"****
50 PRINT USING 40; Res$

60 PRINT USING "3A4X7A4X3A";****RESTART****

RUN RETURN
*** RESTART ***
*** RESTART ***
```

If the string item in the print list is longer than the number of characters specified, the string is truncated. For example, the statement

```
70 PRINT USING "4A";"RESTART"
```

will only print the first four characters of “RESTART”:

REST

If the item is shorter, the rest of the field is filled with blanks on the right.

Formatting Numbers

Numeric specifications can be made up of digit symbols, sign symbols, radix symbols, separator symbols and an exponent symbol.

Digit Symbols

D Specifies a digit position. nD specifies n digit positions. Leading zeros are replaced with blank spaces as fill characters.

Example:

```
10 PRINT USING "DDDD,2X,DD";250,45
```

RUN RETURN

```
250 45
```

Digit Separators

Digit separators are used to break large numbers into groups of digits (generally three digits per group) for easier reading. In the United States, the comma is customarily used; in Europe, the period is commonly used. Note that C and P cannot both be used in the specification for the same print list item.

C Specifies a comma as a separator in the specified position.

P Specifies a period as a separator in the specified position.

The digit separator symbol is output only if a digit in that item has already been output; the separator must appear between two digits.

Examples:

```
10 N12345.67
20 PRINT USING "DDDD.DD";N
30 PRINT USING "DDCDDD.DD";N
40 PRINT USING "2DC3D.2D";N
50 PRINT USING "2DP3D";N
```

RUN RETURN

```
12345.67
12,345.67
12,345.67
12.346
```

Radix Symbols

A radix symbol separates the integer part of a number from the fractional part. In the United States, this is customarily the decimal point, as in 34.7. In Europe, this is frequently the comma, as in 34,7. No more than one radix symbol can appear in a numeric specification.

. Specifies a decimal point in that position.

R Specifies a comma in that position.

Examples:

```
10 PRINT USING
"DDD.DD,2X,DDD.DDD,2X,DDDRDD";123.4,56.789,98,7
20 IMAGE DDD.DDD,4X,DDD.DD
30 PRINT USING 20;.111,22.33
```

RUN RETURN

```
123.40 56.789 98,00 7.00
0.111 22.33
```

Sign Symbols

Two sign symbols control the output of the sign characters + and -. Only one sign symbol can appear in each numeric specification.

- S Specifies output of a + sign if the number is positive, - if the number is negative.
- M Specifies output of a - sign if it is negative, a blank if it is positive.

If the sign symbol appears before the first significant digit of output it floats to the left of the leftmost significant digit.

When no sign symbol is specified and the only value to be output is negative, one of the digit positions will be used for the sign.

Example:

```
10 PRINT USING
  "MDD.DD,2X,DDSD.DD,DDDD"; -34.5,-67,-10
-34.50   6-7.00 -10
```

Floating Specifiers

The sign specifications S and M in a numeric specification will "float" past blanks to the left most digit of a number or to the radix indicator. Sign symbols that are imbedded between significant digits do not float. The following examples show floating and non-floatting specifications for two input values: -17 and +17.

Specification Output for -17 Output for +17

M4D	-17	17
S4D	-17	+17
DMDD	-17	17
DDMD	1-7	1 7
DDDS	17-	17+

Format Replication

Many of the symbols used to make up format specifications can be replicated (repeated) by placing an integer (from 1 thru 255) in front of the symbol. For instance, the following IMAGE statements specify the same format:

```
30 IMAGE DDDDDDD.DD
40 IMAGE 2DD3D.2D
50 IMAGE 6D.2D
```

Placing an integer before a symbol works exactly like having multiple adjacent characters. The X, D, A, and / symbols can be replicated directly.

Example:

```
20 PRINT USING "5DX"; 1,2,3,4,5
```

RUN

1 2 3 4 5

In addition to symbol replication, an entire specification or group of specifications can be replicated by enclosing it in parentheses and placing an integer before the parentheses.

Example:

```
10 IMAGE 3(K,)
20 IMAGE DD.D,6(DDD.DD,)D3(CDDD).DD
30 IMAGE D.D,2(DDD.DD,),3(D.DD,)
40 IMAGE D,4(4X,DD.DD,"LABEL2",2X,DD)
```

The symbols K and @ can also be repeated:

```
80 IMAGE 4(K,)2(@)
```

Note the use of the "," character in the above examples. If a format is repeated for several items in a print list, a comma must be included in the parentheses to indicate that additional print list items are to follow. For example, if there are three print list items, a simple numeric format might be 3(DD,). This is equivalent to DD,DD,DD,. If the comma is not included the result would be DDDDDDD and could be used only with the first print list item.

Examples:

```
10 PRINT USING 20;"ABCDEFGH","abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz","xxxxx","YYYYY"
20 IMAGE 3(AA)
run
ABCDEFabcdefxxxxx  YYYY

>
10 PRINT USING 20;"ABCDEFGH","abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz","xxxxx","YYYYY"
20 IMAGE 3(AA,)
run
ABabxxYY

>
10 PRINT USING 20;"ABCDEFGH","abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz","xxxxx","YYYYY"
15 PRINT "END"
20 IMAGE #3(AAAAAAA,)
run
ABCDEFabcdefxxxxx  YYYY  END
```

Compacted Formatting

A single symbol, K, is used to define an entire specification for either numeric or string output. If the corresponding print item is a string, the entire string is output. If it is a number, it is output in standard form. K outputs no leading or trailing blanks in numeric fields.

Example:

```
90 IMAGE K,2X,K,K,K
100 PRINT USING 90;"ABC",123,"DEF",456
RUN 
ABC 123DEF456
```

Carriage Control

The carriage return and linefeed normally output at the end of the list can be altered by using a carriage control symbol as the first item in a format string.

- # Suppresses both the carriage return and linefeed.
- + Suppresses the linefeed.
- Suppresses the carriage return.

Example:

```
30 IMAGE #,4(A2X,)  
40 IMAGE K  
50 PRINT USING 30;"A","B","C","D"  
60 PRINT USING 40;"****"
```

RUN [RETURN]

A B C D ****

Notice that PRINT USING "+" is equivalent to PRINT LIN(0); and PRINT USING "-" is equivalent to PRINT LIN(-1).

Reusing the Format String

A format string is reused from the beginning if it is exhausted before the print list. The carriage return and linefeed are not normally output until the print list is exhausted.

Example:

```
70 PRINT USING "DDD.DD";25.11,99,9
```

RUN [RETURN]

25.11 99.00 9.00

Field Overflow

If a numeric item requires more digits than the field specification provides, an overflow condition occurs. When this happens, the item which causes the overflow is replaced with a field of \$. Then the rest of the print list is output.

Example:

```
105 IMAGE 3(DD.D)  
110 PRINT USING 10S;111,2,33.3  
120 PRINT USING 10S;12.3,123.4,1234.56  
130 PRINT USING 10S;12.3,-1.2,-12.3
```

RUN [RETURN]

```
$$$$ 2.033.3  
12.3$$$$$  
12.3-1.2$$$
```

Programming Considerations

One factor that must be taken into account when creating formatted output with PRINT USING is the number of columns in the output device. When printing numeric output, you should specify a format that will not cause a line of output characters to exceed the number of characters per line of the output device (display or printer).

This section describes the statements available to organize and use data in arrays. The statements presented are those used to reserve storage space for the array data:

- DIM
- INTEGER
- LONG
- SHORT

Techniques used to enter and print array data are also described.

The discussion is initially limited to one and two-dimensional arrays. However, many of the statements can also be used with arrays of up to 32 dimensions. The general case of multi-dimensional arrays is covered in the final pages of this section.

DIMENSIONING ARRAYS

DIM Statement

The DIM statement is used to reserve storage space for the data in an array of SHORT or string data. (Type SHORT is the normal default data type. This can be changed using the SET command.) In order to use arrays of LONG or INTEGER data, use a type declaration statement (refer to the description of the DIM statement). A DIM statement specifies the array name and the size (number of elements) of the array. Size is indicated by specifying an upper bound for each dimension. For example, a one-dimensional array, Weight, that contains 25 LONG values is dimensioned:

```
array  
name  
~~~~~  
10 LONG Weight(24)
```

Individual elements are then referenced with subscripted variables as Weight(0), Weight(1), etc., through Weight(24).

The statement

```
20 LONG Z(25)
```

dimensions a LONG one-dimensional array of 26 elements: Z(0), Z(1), Z(2), etc., through Z(25). The statement

```
30 DIM Job$(50)[20]
```

dimensions a one-dimensional array of 51 string values. In addition to the keyword, the array name, and the upper bound, you may also specify the maximum length (maximum number of characters per string). You must specify a maximum length for all string arrays that will contain strings longer than 18 characters.

It is recommended that you specify the maximum length even when all strings will be shorter than 18 characters. This makes the program easier for yourself and others to read.

For two-dimensional arrays, the upper bounds for both dimensions must be specified. 0 is the lower bound for each dimension.

```
10 DIM Inv(5,3)
```

dimensions a two-dimensional array of SHORT values with 6 rows and 4 columns. Individual elements are then referenced as:

Inv(0,0)	Inv(0,1)	Inv(0,2)	Inv(0,3)
Inv(1,0)	Inv(1,1)	Inv(1,2)	Inv(1,3)
Inv(2,0)	Inv(2,1)	Inv(2,2)	Inv(2,3)
Inv(3,0)	Inv(3,1)	Inv(3,2)	Inv(3,3)
Inv(4,0)	Inv(4,1)	Inv(4,2)	Inv(4,3)
Inv(5,0)	Inv(5,1)	Inv(5,2)	Inv(5,3)

For example, Inv(1,3) is a subscripted variable that refers to the value in the first row and third column of Inv. Note that Inv(0,3) refers to the value in the zero row and third column.

The statement

```
20 DIM Prod$(2,39){25}
```

dimensions a two-dimensional array of string values with 3 rows and 40 columns. Each string in the array has a maximum length of 25 characters.

Type Declaration Statements

Type declaration statements are used to dimension arrays that contain numeric data. An array of SHORT values can also be dimensioned with a DIM statement. (Numeric data types are explained in Section 2.) A type declaration statement for numeric arrays consists of a numeric type, an array name, and the size of the array. Multiple arrays can be included in a single type declaration statement. The numeric type applies to all arrays named in the statement.

Examples:

numeric type array names
10 INTEGER A(10),B(4,4)

Declares a one-dimensional array A with 11 INTEGERS, and a two-dimensional size array B with 25 INTEGERS.

```
20 SHORT B1(20)
```

Declares a one-dimensional array B1 with 21 SHORT values. The statement `20 DIM B1(20)` has the identical effect.

```
30 LONG C(5),D(39)
```

Declares a one-dimensional array C with six LONG values, a one-dimensional array D with 40 LONG values.

```
20 DIM A(15),B(4)
```

The array A contains 16 SHORT values and the array B contains 5 SHORT values.

```
30 DIM C$(5,3){20}
```

The two-dimensional array C\$ has 6 rows and 4 columns of string values.

```
40 DIM G(19,4)
```

The two-dimensional array G contains 20 rows and 5 columns of SHORT values.

An array which appears in a type declaration statement may not appear in a DIM statement. If it does, the program will halt and an error message will be displayed. You cannot redimension arrays within a program. Attempting to execute the same dimension statement again or to execute another dimension statement with the same variables and parameters will cause a REDECLARED VARIABLE error.

It is possible (but not recommended) to use an array in a program without first using a DIM statement or a type declaration statement to set aside storage space for the data. In this case, the number of dimensions is assumed from the first program statement executed which references the array. If the dimensions of a one-dimensional array are not specified, the array is assumed to have an upper bound of 10 (ie. 11 elements). If the dimensions of a two-dimensional array are not specified, both dimensions are assumed to have an upperbound of 10 (ie. 11 rows and 11 columns). This provides a total of 121 elements.

If the actual array is larger, the program will halt and the error message "SUBSCRIPT OUT OF RANGE IN LINE xxx" will be displayed.

The DIM statement and the type declaration statements specify a maximum number of elements for each array.

You may not exceed or change this maximum within the program. If you attempt to do so, an error occurs and program execution stops.

USING ARRAYS

Entering Data Into An Array

Data may be entered into an array element by element as shown in the examples below.

Example:

(One-dimensional array)

```
10 DIM A(25)
20 FOR I=0 TO 25
30 INPUT A(I)
40 NEXT I
.
.
.
```

RUN

?1		A(0) = 1
?22		A(1) = 22
?36		A(2) = 36
.	.	.
.	.	.

You need not reference the 0 row or column in an array. All elements in arrays are initialized to 0 when the program is run. String array elements are initialized to null strings.

Example:

(Two-dimensional array)

```

10 FOR I=1 TO 3
20 FOR J=1 TO 5
30 INPUT M(I,J)
40 NEXT J
50 NEXT I
.
.
.

RUN RETURN
?2.5 RETURN      M = 2.5  1.7  4.2  0.2  1.0
?1.7 RETURN      4.9   32.   4.7   5.6   7.2
?4.2 RETURN      8.9   9.8   1.1   2.2   3.3
.
.
.

etc

```

Sample Program

```

10 DIM Price(5,3)
20 DATA 1,0,2.95,2,0,4.95,3,6,5.50,4,2,12.00,5,1,2.00
30 FOR I=1 to 5
40 READ Price(I,1),Price(I,2),Price(I,3)
50 LET Total=0
60 FOR I=1 TO 5          Price =  1      0      2.95
70 LET Total=Total+Price(I,3)        2      0      4.95
80 NEXT I                3      6      5.50
90 PRINT "TOTAL=";Total        4      2     12.00
                                5      1      2.00

```

RUN RETURN

TOTAL= 27.40

Printing Array Data

```

100 PRINT A(1), LIN(2)
101 PRINT A(2), LIN(2)
102 PRINT A(3), LIN(2)
103 PRINT
104 PRINT B(1,1),B(1,2),LIN(2),B(2,1),B(2,2),LIN(2)
105 PRINT

```

Examples:

```

10 PRINT A(1),LIN(2),A(2),LIN(2),A(3),LIN(2),LIN(2),SPA(10),
11 PRINT B(1,1),B(1,2),LIN(2)
20 PRINT B(2,1),B(2,2),LIN(2),LIN(1)

200 PRINT A(1),LIN(2),
201 PRINT A(2),LIN(2),
202 PRINT A(3),LIN(2),
204 PRINT B(1,1);B(1,2);LIN(2);B(2,1);B(2,2);LIN(2),LIN(1)

```

Substrings as Array Elements

It is possible to reference strings or substrings as array elements. (Refer to Section 7 for a discussion of strings and substrings.) The substring designator immediately follows the array element name and is enclosed in parentheses.

Example

Assume

```
10 DIM A$(3){8},B$(2,2){7}
```

and

```
A$(1)="ABC", A$(2)="DEF", A$(3)="GHI"  
B$(1,1)="123", B$(1,2)="456"  
B$(2,1)="789", B$(2,2)=""
```

then

```
A$(1){2,2}="B"  
A$(1){2,1}="B"  
B$(2,1){2,2}="8"  
B$(2,1){2,1}="8"
```

Example: It is often convenient to store character data in an array in order to reference groups of items.

Assume that you must store the names, addresses, and zip codes for 10 companies. Each of the items can be up to 20 characters long. They can be stored in a 2-dimensional string array. The declaration would be as follows:

```
10 DIM A$(10,3){20}
```

You can now address any of the elements for any of the companies directly. The row number gives the data entries for a specific company while the column number selects the name, address, or zip code.

```
Data = "AJAX1","100 River Drive","99990"  
      "AJAX2","110 River Drive","99991"  
      .  
      "AJAX10","190 River Drive","99999"
```

The address of the 7th company would be accessed as A\$(7,2).

ARRAY FUNCTIONS

There are no built-in matrix or array functions in BASIC. Most array functions can be easily provided with subroutines or subprograms. Examples are given for the following functions:

- Zero
- Constant
- Identity
- Transpose

Setting an Array to Zero or Other Constant

One of the most common array functions is the initializing of arrays or array elements. All array elements are set to zero when the array is declared. This eliminates the need to assign the value of zero to each array element at the beginning of a program. If the array must be set to zero at some point later in the program or if the initial value is other than zero, you can use the following technique:

Example: Set the array Balance(5,10) to a value of 10.

```
10 FOR I = 1 TO 5  
20 FOR J = 1 TO 10  
30 Balance(I,J) = 10  
40 NEXT J  
50 NEXT I
```

Setting an Array to an Identity Array

An array can be set to the identity array using the following technique:

Example: Set the array Ident(8,8) to an identity. Array elements on the major diagonal (I=J) having a value of 1, all others having a value of zero.

```
10 FOR I = 1 TO 8  
20 FOR J = 1 TO 8  
30 Ident(I,J) = I AND J  
40 NEXT J  
50 NEXT I
```

Transposing Arrays

You can transpose an array using the following technique:

Example: Assign the array Trans(3,4) to the transposition values of array Normal(4,3).

```
10 FOR I = 1 TO 4  
20 FOR J = 1 TO 3  
30 Trans(J,I) = Normal(I,J)  
40 NEXT J  
50 NEXT I
```

Strings are groups of ASCII characters. They allow you to manipulate textual data and to provide printed output. In addition, strings allow you to perform interactive dialog with the program user. Allowing you to use strings and string functions makes it relatively easy to develop application programs to control text. (Refer to Section 2 for a discussion of string data.)

BASIC provides a variety of special string functions. These functions are described in Section 12. Most string functions are used to act on only a portion of a string at a time. For example, the text string that makes up a sentence might be scanned a few characters at a time to detect words. The remainder of this section describes how to access the data contained in strings.

SUBSTRINGS

A substring is a portion of a string rather than the entire string. Normally, a reference to a string variable refers to the entire string. For instance, if A\$ = "ABC123" then after the statement

```
50 LET B$ = A$  
B$ = "ABC123".
```

However, sometimes it is necessary to reference only a portion of a string. Suppose B\$ is to be set equal only to the last three characters of A\$. This can be done using the substring designator. Again assume that A\$ = "ABC123". The statement

```
50 LET B$ = A$[4,6]  
sets B$ = "123", not "ABC123".
```

There are three ways to designate a substring. The first method is to indicate the starting index (position) of the substring, followed by a comma (","), followed by the ending index of the substring.

Examples:

If A\$ = "ABC123+-*/", then

```
starting   ending  
index     index  
          ↘  
A$[1,3] = "ABC"  
A$[4,6] = "123"  
A$[7,10] = "+-*/*"  
A$[1,10] = "ABC123+-*/"
```

Notice that A\$[1,10] is effectively the same as just plain A\$. The second method of designating a substring is to give the position of the first character, followed by a semicolon (";"), followed by an expression indicating the length of the substring. Continuing the above example:

```
starting      length  
index       ↗  
          ↘  
A$[1;3] = "ABC"  
A$[4;3] = "123"  
A$[7;4] = "+-*/*"  
A$[1;10] = "ABC123+-*/"
```

Notice that A\$[1;10] is effectively the same as just plain A\$.

The third method of designating a substring is to give the starting index of the substring only. This is really a special case of method 1, in which the ending index is assumed to be the length of the string. Continuing the example above:

```
starting  
index  
          ↗  
          ↘  
A$[1] = "ABC123+-*/"  
A$[5] = "23+-*/"  
A$[10] = "/"
```

Notice that A\$[1] is effectively the same as just plain A\$.

Regardless of which method is used, the first position indicator, the second position indicator, and the length indicator may be any numeric expression with a value of 1 to 255. Any expression used as a substring designator which has a SHORT or LONG value is rounded to the nearest integer.

Examples:

```
A$[N,M]  
A$[F;L]  
A$[N + SQR(Z);L - 1]  
A$[A(I),A(J)]  
A$[C^D^E;C^D^E + Q]
```

In the special case of the null string, a null substring is always extracted as long as the substring designator is valid.

Substrings are frequently used to insert or change characters in a string without affecting the rest of that string.

If the item being assigned is too long for the substring, the item is truncated from the right until it fits.

If the starting index is greater than the length of the string, the null string is assumed.

If the specified starting index is less than 1, the ending index is less than 1, or the starting index is greater than the ending index, an error message will be displayed and the program will be terminated.

Example:

10 DIM Heading\$[25]

The string Heading\$ has maximum length of 25 characters.

20 LET Heading\$ = "School of"

Initially, Heading\$ is the 10 character string "School of"

30 LET B\$ = "Business"
40 LET Ed\$ = "Education"
50 LET En\$ = "Engineering"
60 LET L\$ = "Law"
70 LET M\$ = "Medicine"
.
.

1050 LET Heading\$[11] = B\$

The string B\$ is inserted into the string Heading\$ beginning at the 11th character of Heading\$.

1055 PRINT Heading\$

Prints: School of Business

3000 LET Heading\$[11] = En\$

The string En\$ is inserted into the string Heading\$ beginning at the 11th character of Heading\$.

3010 PRINT Heading\$

Prints: School of Engineering

5500 LET Heading\$[11] = L\$

The string L\$ is inserted into the string Heading\$ beginning at the 11th character of Heading\$.

5510 PRINT Heading\$

Prints: School of Law

Subprograms

Programs developed for business or engineering applications can easily contain hundreds of statements. A large program is easier to develop, debug, and document if it is divided into several program units. Each of the program units can then perform a single task. In BASIC, the term program unit can refer to a main program or a subprogram.

Study the diagram in figure 8-1. It illustrates how a large program might be broken up and re-organized using subprograms. A main program links the program units together.

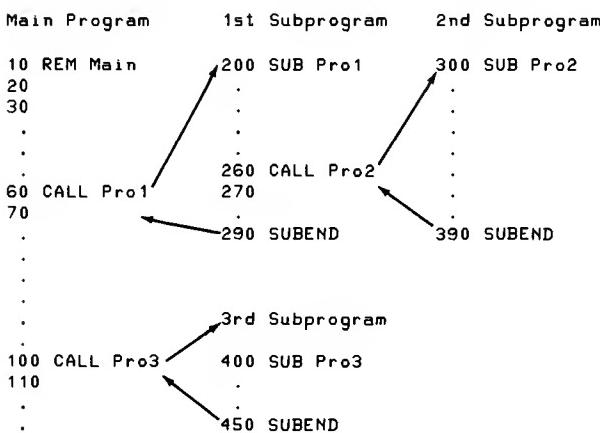


Figure 8-1. Subprogram Example.

The arrows indicate where control is transferred from one program unit to another. For instance, at main program statement 60, control passes to the first subprogram. When the first subprogram is finished processing, the main program resumes at statement 70. Notice how, before the first subprogram ends, control passes to the second subprogram, and from there back to the first subprogram.

The main program can call subprograms. Subprograms can call other subprograms and they can call themselves.

Listed following is a BASIC program that calculates a person's weekly salary including overtime pay (statements 10 to 110), and then calls on a subprogram, Dduct, first (at statement 190) to calculate a tax deduction, then (at statement 210) to calculate a deduction for an automatic savings deposit, and a third time (at statement 230) to calculate a deduction for an insurance payment.

SUB and SUBEND Statements

A subprogram always begins with a SUB statement and ends with a SUBEND statement. The occurrence of the first SUB statement terminates the main program. In the example in figure 8-2 the SUB statement is:

```

300 SUB Dduct (Category$, Salary, Percent,
Takehome, Tded)

```

A subprogram name is composed of an upper case letter of the alphabet, A through Z, which may be followed by any combination of digits, lower case letters, or the underscore symbol “_”.

The SUB statement must be the first statement in a line and the SUBEND statement must be the only entry in a line.

A formal parameter can be a simple string or numeric variable, or an entire numeric or string array or a logical file number. When the subprogram is executed, values are passed to the formal parameters from the actual parameters in the CALL statement. For instance, in Figure 8-2, the first CALL statement is:

```

190 CALL Dduct (D$, Salary, Percent, Ttal, Tded)

```

At this point in the program, the values of the actual parameters are:

D\$	= "Tax"
Salary	= 139.65
Percent	= 10
Ttal	= 139.65
Tded	= 13.97

The values of the parameters in the CALL statement are passed to the parameters in the SUB statement according to their position in the parameter list; that is, the value of the first actual parameter is passed to the first formal parameter; the value of the second actual parameter is passed to the second formal parameter; and so on. Thus, when the subprogram Dduct is called by statement 190, the values assigned to the formal parameters are:

Category\$	= "Tax"
Salary	= 139.65
Percent	= 10
Takehome	= 139.65
Tded	= 13.97

```

10 PRINT SPA(12); "Weekly Pay Calculator"; LIN(1)
20 READ Hours,Wage
30 DATA 40,2.85,6
40 Pay=Hours*Wage
45 IMAGE 4X,3D.2D,16A,D.2D,4A,3D.2D
50 PRINT USING 45;Hours;" standard hrs @ ";Wage;" = $$";Pay
60 REM ** This section computes overtime pay **
80 READ Overtime
90 Ovpay=Overtime*Wage*1.5
100 Ttai=Pay+Ovpay
110 PRINT USING 45;Overtime;" overtime hrs @ ",Wage*1.5," = $$";Ovpay
112 PRINT SPA(34);"-----"
115 PRINT USING "12X,18A,4A,3D.2D2/";"Total pay";" = $$";Ttai
120 REM ** This section CALLs Dduct to compute deductions **
130 Salary=Ttai
140 D$="Tax"
150 Temp=10
160 IF Ttai>160 THEN Temp=15
170 IF Ttai>195 THEN Temp=20
180 IF Ttai>240 THEN Temp=25
190 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,Temp,Ttai,Tded)
200 D$="Savings"
210 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,Temp/2,Ttai,Tded)
220 D$="Insurance"
230 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,3,Ttai,Tded)
235 PRINT SPA(34);"-----"
240 PRINT USING 260;"Total deductions = $$";Tded
250 PRINT USING 260;"NET (takehome) PAY = $$";Ttai
260 IMAGE /12X,22A,3D.2D/
270 END
300 SUB Dduct(Category$,Salary,Percent,Takehome,Tded)
310 REM ** This subprogram makes payroll deductions **
320 Temp=Salary*Percent*.01
330 PRINT USING "10X,21A,3A,3D.2D";Category$&" deduction ";"= $$";Temp
340 Takehome=Takehome-Temp
350 Tded=Tded-Temp
360 SUBEND

```

```

RUN RETURN
      Weekly Pay Calculator

40.00 standard hrs @ 2.85 = $114.00
6.00 overtime hrs @ 4.28 = $ 25.65
-----
Total pay          = $139.65

Tax deduction      = $ 13.97
Savings deduction  = $   6.98
Insurance deduction = $   4.19
-----
Total deductions   = $ 25.14

NET (takehome) PAY = $114.51

```

Figure 8-2. Payroll Deduction Subprogram

Note that the variable names of the corresponding parameters are not the same. The values are assigned according to their position in the parameter list. An actual parameter can be a numeric or string variable, numeric or string expression, an array, or a logical file number.

The null subscript notation is used to specify an array in subprogram formal and actual parameter lists. There are two forms of the null subscript notation as illustrated below. When commas are used to indicate the number of dimensions in the array, BASIC checks to insure that the number of subscripts in the actual and formal parameters match.

Examples:

<code>Salary()</code>	Specifies a one-dimensional numeric array named Salary.
<code>Salary(,)</code>	Specifies a two-dimensional numeric array named Salary. The number of dimensions is indicated by the number of commas. n commas indicate an n + 1 dimensional array.
<code>Names\$(, ,)</code>	Specifies a 3-dimensional string array named Names\$. The formal and actual parameters must correspond in type (i.e., string or numeric, single value or array or logical file number) and number (i.e., if there are 3 actual parameters in the CALL statement, there must be exactly 3 formal parameters in the corresponding SUB statement).

Examples:

- A. `10 CALL Route(D$,L$,M)` Valid.
- `.`
- `99 SUB Route(Driver$,License$,Mileage)`
- B. `10 CALL Order(X + 1, N * Y,Z)` Valid.
- `.`
- `99 SUB Order(Number,Quantity,Price)`
- C. `10 CALL Reg(Number,Name$)` INVALID. The number of actual parameters must equal the number of formal parameters.
- `50 SUB Reg(Number,Name$,Date)`
- D. `10 CALL Report(N$,D$,A12$)` INVALID. Third actual parameter in the SUB statement is a string but third formal parameter is a numeric variable. Code should be `Code$`.
- `50 SUB Report(Q$,R$,Code)`

Numeric variables in parameter lists are assumed to be type SHORT unless specified otherwise.

Examples:

<code>100 SUB Sample(A(),B)</code>	The subprogram Sample has two SHORT parameters: the array A, and B.
<code>200 SUB Sample_2(S(),T)</code>	The subprogram Sample_2 has the SHORT array parameter S() and the INTEGER parameter T.
<code>300 SUB Sample_3(LONG X(),Y)</code>	The subprogram Sample_3 has the LONG array parameter X() and the SHORT parameter Y.

Notice that when a numeric type is specified in a parameter list, the type applies only to the immediately following variable.

Pass-by-reference/ Pass-by-value

Subprogram parameters can be passed-by-reference or passed-by-value. Passed-by-reference means that the actual and formal parameters have the same location in memory. Thus, when the value of the formal parameter is changed in a subprogram, the value of the actual parameter is also changed.

Example:

<code>10 X = 0 20 Y = 99</code>	
<code>30 CALL Formula(X,Y)</code>	Actual parameters X and Y are passed-by-reference to formal parameters A and B. Any changes to A and B in the subprogram will also affect X and Y.

```
120 SUB Formula(A,B)
130 A = A + 3
140 B = B + 1
150 SUBEND
.
.
```

Actual parameters that are variables are always passed-by-reference unless the variable is enclosed in parentheses. Arrays must always be passed-by-reference. When numeric parameters are passed by reference, the formal parameter is changed to the same type as the actual (passed) parameter. If the formal parameter is declared to be of a specified type then the passed parameter must be of the same type.

When the actual parameter is a constant, an expression, or a variable in parentheses, it is passed-by-value. When a parameter is passed-by-value, the actual and formal parameters have different locations in memory. Initially the two locations have the same value, but if the value of one is changed, the value of the other is not affected.

Example:

```
10 M = 0
20 N = 21
30 CALL Calc(3,(M),N+4) These actual parameters are
                                all passed-by-value to the
                                formal parameters A1, A2,
                                and A3. Any changes to A1,
                                A2, and A3 in the sub-
                                program have no effect on the
                                actual parameters.

120 SUB Calc(A1,A2,A3) ! A1 = 3; A2 = 0; A3 = 25
130 A1 = A1*A2 ! A1 = 3*0 = 1
140 A2 = A2 + 2 ! A2 = 0 + 2 = 2
150 A3 = A3*A2 ! A3 = 25*2 = 625
```

The examples in figure 8-3 illustrate the distinction between pass-by-reference and pass-by-value. The four examples are all the same except that the fourth parameter is passed-by-reference in example A and passed-by-value in examples B, C, and D.

- A. The fourth actual parameter is a variable, hence when the value of the fourth formal parameter is changed by the subprogram (statement 340), the value of the actual parameter also changes.
- B. The fourth actual parameter is a variable enclosed in parentheses, hence when the value of the fourth formal parameter is changed in the subprogram (statement 340), the value of the actual parameter is unaffected.
- C. The fourth actual parameter is an expression, hence when the value of the fourth formal parameter is changed in the subprogram (340), the value of the actual parameter is unaffected.
- D. The fourth actual parameter is a constant, hence when the value of the fourth formal parameter is changed in the subprogram (340), the value of the corresponding actual parameter is unaffected.

Local Variables

Variables within a subprogram that are not contained in the list of formal parameters in the SUB statement are local to that subprogram. This means that the variables in a program which calls a subprogram are distinct from variables with the same name within the called subprogram.

Examples:

```
A. 10 INTEGER A
20 LET A = 100
    .
    .
    .
70 CALL Calc (X,Y,Z)
```

Values of X, Y, and Z are passed (by reference) to the formal parameters Height, Weight, and Age. Subprogram Calc begins.

```
80 PRINT A
```

Prints the value of the INTEGER A (100, not 8.95).

```
400 SUB Calc(Height,Weight,Age)
```

Height, Weight, and Age are assigned the values of X, Y, and Z.

```
410 LONG A
```

Declares a LONG variable A that is distinct from the INTEGER A in the calling program unit.

```
490 LET A = 8.95
```

Assigns the value 8.95 to the local LONG variable A. This does not affect the value of the INTEGER A in the calling program unit.

```
500 PRINT A
```

Prints 8.95.

```
510 SUBEND
```

Returns to the calling program unit at statement 80.

```
B. 10 LONG B
20 LET B = 47
    .
    .
    .
70 CALL Result (B)
```

The value of B is passed (by reference) to the variable X in statement 300. Any changes to X in the subprogram will also change the value of B in this calling program unit.

```
80 PRINT B
```

Prints 49.

```
300 SUB Result (X)
```

X is assigned the value of B.

```
320 LET X = X + 2
```

Changes the value of the formal parameter X. Also changes the value of B in the calling program unit (passed-by-reference).

```
340 PRINT X
```

Prints 49.

```
350 SUBEND
```

Returns to calling program unit at statement 70.

```

        fourth actual parameter (variable) →
190 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,Percent,Ttal,Tded)
·     fourth formal parameter
·
300 SUB Dduct(Category$,Salary,Percent,Takehome,Tded)
340 LET Takehome = Takehome - ( Salary * Percent * .01 )
350 SUBEND

```

A. Variable Parameter

```

variable in parentheses →
190 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,Percent,(Ttal),Tded)
·
300 SUB Dduct(Category$,Salary,Percent,Takehome,Tded)
340 LET Takehome = Takehome - ( Salary * Percent * .01 )
350 SUBEND

```

B. Parameter Enclosed in Parentheses

```

(expression) →
190 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,Percent,4*Ttal,Tded)
·
300 SUB Dduct(Category$,Salary,Percent,Takehome,Tded)
340 LET Takehome = Takehome - ( Salary * Percent * .01 )
350 SUBEND

```

C. Parameter is an Expression

```

(constant) →
190 CALL Dduct(D$,Salary,Percent,240,Tded)
·
300 SUB Dduct(Category$,Salary,Percent,Takehome,Tded)
340 LET Takehome = Takehome - ( Salary * Percent * .01 )
350 SUBEND

```

D. Parameter is a Constant

Figure 8-3. Parameter Passing

All DATA, IMAGE, GOTO, ON END, ON ERROR, ON KEY, OFF KEY, GOSUB, ON...GOTO, ON...GOSUB, RESTORE, and RESUME statements in a program unit are local to that program unit. They can only reference line numbers and interrupt keys for that program unit.

Referencing Files

A file in a calling program may be referenced in a subprogram by passing its file number as a parameter.

Example:

```
20 ASSIGN "AFILE" TO #2      AFILE is opened as #2.  
80 CALL Sprog1(N,N$,#2)      When the subprogram is  
                             called, #2 is passed as the  
                             third parameter.  
  
200 SUB Sprog1(Number,Name$,#10)  
.  
250 READ #10;A$              This statement reads a val-  
                             ue for A$ from the file  
                             "AFILE" which is file #2 in  
                             the main program and file  
                             #10 in the subprogram  
                             Sprog1.
```

In the CALL statement, the file number parameter must be a number or a numeric expression. The numeric expression is evaluated and rounded to the nearest integer at the time of the call. In the SUB statement, the file number must be an INTEGER value. File numbers that are not passed as parameters are local to the subprogram in which they appear. Any ON END # statement is local to the subprogram.

Example:

```
20 X = 1  
30 CALL Closef(#X)  
.  
200 SUB Closef(#3)  
210 ASSIGN * TO #3  
220 SUBEND  
.  
.
```

When a file is closed in a subprogram with the ASSIGN * statement, all references to the originally passed file are deleted and any subsequent assignment to the formal file parameter in the subprogram will be local to that subprogram. If you want to reassign a file in a subprogram, use the ASSIGN filename statement to close the passed file. This will establish a new reference to the file which can be used locally as well as in other program units.

Files are used to store collections of data that 1) are too large to be contained conveniently in DATA statements in your program; or 2) must be stored independently because the data is going to be used by more than one program.

The use of files involves the following operations which are explained in detail in this section:

- Open files. – This gives your program access to the file and assigns a file number to that file. The file number is then used throughout the rest of your program to refer to that particular file.
- Write to files. – You can write on the file (put data into the file from your program).
- Read from files. – Read data on the file and copy data from the file to variables in your program.
- Close files. – Closing a file indicates that your program is finished using the file. The data remains on the file for future use.

ASSIGN Statement

Before a program can read from or write to a file, that file must be opened by using an ASSIGN statement. Opening a file causes that file to be associated with a file number. The file pointer is set to the current position of the selected file. The terminal file system maintains the position of the file pointer from this point on. No special file positioning is performed such as rewinding cartridge tapes or homing the display cursor. Once a file is open, all references to it are through its file number.

Examples:

	filename	file number
10 ASSIGN "AFILE" TO #1		
20 ASSIGN "PAYFILE" TO #2		
30 ASSIGN "CFILE" TO #5.8		
	Associates CFILE with file #6 (the closest integer to 5.8).	
40 ASSIGN "DFILE" TO #1		
	Closes AFILE and associates file #1 with DFILE.	
50 ASSIGN "F4" TO #(5*R)		
	Evaluates the expression in parentheses to the nearest integer, then associates that value (file number) with F4.	
60 ASSIGN "PAYFILE" TO #8		
	PAYFILE has already been associated with file #2 in statement 20. PAYFILE can now be referenced as either file #2 or file #8.	

The filename can be a standard name that the terminal file system uses. Standard filenames are RTAPE, DISPLAY, HP-IB#4, etc. You can also use the Terminal ASSIGN command (COMMAND Channel) to establish special filenames by equating your filename to a standard terminal file name. For example, AFILE can be equated to the right cartridge tape.

COMMAND, ASSIGN NAME AFILE TO RTAPE, RETURN

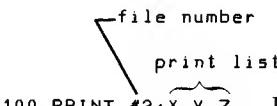
When an ASSIGN statement is executed, the program is given access to read from and write to the file. If the file cannot be opened, an error message is displayed and the program will halt. If another file is already associated with the file number specified in the ASSIGN statement, that file is closed and the specified one is opened.

Assigning a file to the display equates the file to the contents of the terminal display memory, not the terminal keyboard.

Serial PRINT # Statement

The serial PRINT # statement writes data items on a file starting at the current position of the pointer. The items may be numeric or string expressions.

Examples:



 100 PRINT #2; X,Y,Z Prints the values of the three numeric variables X, Y, and Z on file #2.

300 PRINT #1 A serial PRINT # statement with no print list will generate a record with only a carriage return and a line feed character.

The items in the print list are separated by commas or semicolons. Each item in the print list is written on the file in the order it appears in the print list. The items are written starting at the current position of the file pointer, overwriting whatever data may be in that position on the file. When a file is opened, the pointer is set to the current file position (not the beginning of the file).

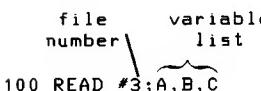
If you want to suppress the carriage return and linefeed at the end of a file record, terminate the file print statement with a comma or semicolon following the print list. A record will be sent to the file each time the end of the print list is reached and each time a linefeed character is generated. This allows a single print statement to generate multiple records if you include linefeed characters (CHR\$(10)) as print list items.

10 PRINT #2; A\$,CHR\$(10),B\$,CHR\$(10),C\$

READ # Statement

The READ # statement reads data items from a specified file into numeric or string variables.

Examples:


100 READ #3;A,B,C Reads three values from file #3 into the numeric variables A,B, and C.

200 READ #2;N\$,P Reads from file #2, a string value for N\$ and a numeric value for P.

The first item read is the item following the current position of the pointer; i.e., the item immediately following the last item accessed. Record boundaries are ignored. Numeric values can be assigned only to numeric variables, and string values to string variables. Otherwise an error message is generated. If a numeric value is not the same data type as the variable, conversion with rounding is performed. If an attempt is made to read beyond the end of data in the file, an error message is displayed and the program stops. Data items in the file must be separated by commas.

LINPUT # Statement

The LINPUT # statement reads the entire contents of the next available record from the file and assigns the contents to a specified string variable. If the record contains a carriage return and line feed at the end, these characters will not be removed and will be assigned to the string variable along with the other characters. If the record contains numeric values, the numbers are read as ASCII characters.

Example:


100 LINPUT #3;A\$ Reads the next available record from file #3 and assigns the contents to A\$.

The string variable should be dimensioned large enough to accept the entire record. If the record is too long to fit in the string variable, it is truncated.

RESTORE # Statement

The RESTORE # statement repositions the file pointer to the beginning of the file specified. This statement is effective only for tapes and some HP-IB devices. It does not affect the display.

Example:

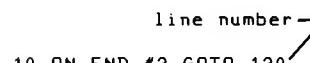

30 RESTORE #4 Repositions the file pointer #4 to the beginning of file #4.

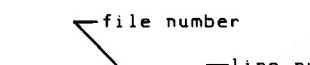
ON END # Statement

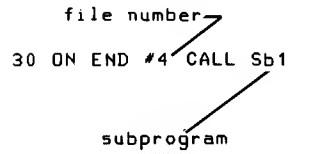
The ON END # statement sets a flag for a specified file so that if and when an end-of-file is encountered in reading or writing on that file, control is transferred to another statement in that program. There are three forms of the ON END # statement:

ON END...GOTO
ON END...GOSUB
ON END...CALL

Examples:


10 ON END #2 GOTO 120 When an end-of-file is encountered in file #2, the program branches to line 120.


20 ON END #3 GOSUB 200 When an end-of-file is encountered in file #3, the program branches to the subroutine at line 200.


30 ON END #4 CALL Sb1 When an end-of-file is encountered in file #4, the program calls subprogram SB1. Subprograms and the CALL statement are discussed in Section 8.

ON END ... GOSUB and ON END ... CALL cause the specified subroutine or subprogram to be executed. When the subroutine or subprogram returns control, the file input statement that generated the ON END condition will be reexecuted. The entire item list will be input (not just the items following the item that caused the end-of-file condition). This means that the subroutine or subprogram must do something to eliminate the end-of-file condition (e.g. rewind the tape or reassign the file) before returning. If this is not done you will simply loop until the program is manually aborted.

If no ON END # statement is used and an end-of-file is encountered, an error message is displayed and the program stops.

Closing a File

When a program ends, all files that were opened in that program are automatically closed.

There are two ways to close a file before the end of the program. You may use an ASSIGN statement in which the filename is replaced with an asterisk (*):

Examples:

```
10 ASSIGN * TO #2      Closes file #2.  
20 ASSIGN * TO #4      Closes file #4.
```

If the ASSIGN * statement is used in a subprogram, references to the file number are deleted in all program units. Additional information on subprograms is given in Section 8.

You can also close a file by assigning that file's file number to another file:

Examples:

```
10 ASSIGN "FILE1" TO #3  Opens FILE1.  
20 ASSIGN "FILE2" TO #3  Closes FILE1  
                           and opens FILE2.
```

This method of closing files affects only the current program unit. It does not close the file in other program units. If you attempt to close a file that is not open, nothing will happen.

File Error Variables

File errors can be acted on within your program by using the ON ERROR statement. You can test the error number to determine the type of the file error and take the appropriate action. A list of file errors is given in Appendix E.

Output to Printers and Terminals

You can list data to a lineprinter or a terminal by assigning a file number to the device with any ASSIGN statement.

Examples:

device name

```
50 ASSIGN "LP1" TO #4      Assigns file number 4 to the  
                           lineprinter named LP1.  
60 ASSIGN "TE#4" TO #5      Assigns file number to the  
                           terminal named TE#4.  
70 ASSIGN "T" TO #3        Assigns file number to the  
                           device named T.
```

Each lineprinter and terminal that is connected to your terminal has a device name which was assigned when the device was attached to the terminal. If you do not know a particular device name, use the terminal SHOW command. You can use the terminal command channel to equate any convenient name to a logical device. For additional information refer to the Terminal User manual.

Once a file number has been assigned, you can use that file number in a PRINT statement as shown in the following examples.

Examples:

```
80 PRINT #4;X,Y,Z      Prints the values of X,Y, and  
                           Z to file #4 which was as-  
                           signed to the lineprinter  
                           LP1.  
90 PRINT #6;A$;N      Prints the values of A$ and N  
                           to file #6 which was assigned  
                           to the device T.
```

The spacing rules that apply to commas, semicolons, and the TAB, SPA, and LIN functions in a simple PRINT statement (Section 4) also apply when printing to files

Formatted Output to Devices

Output to a device file such as a line printer can be formatted with the PRINT # USING statement.

Examples:

```
120 PRINT #4 USING 121;A,B,C  
121 IMAGE 3X,2D,3X,2D,3X,2D  Prints the values of  
                           A,B, and C to file #4 which was as-  
                           signed to LP1. The output is formatted  
                           using the format specified in the IM-  
                           AGE statement at line 121.
```

The rules for specifying the format are the same as those described in Section 5. The file number in a PRINT # USING statement must be assigned to a file name with the ASSIGN statement.

Terminal Operations

This section describes some of the special features available in Terminal BASIC that allow your program to interact with the terminal's display, keyboard, and data communications capabilities. These features are not normally found in a BASIC interpreter. You should review these capabilities before writing your application program.

Note: Operation of the terminal's cartridge tape, file, and graphics functions are described in the Files, and AGL sections of this manual.

The terminal functions are used in the same manner as other BASIC functions and statements. The operations use string and numeric arguments and may return string, numeric, or logical values or perform some terminal operation. Terminal operations are divided into the following categories:

- Display
- Keyboard
- Data Communications
- Program Control

Table 10-1 contains a list of terminal operations that can be accessed using Terminal BASIC. (Note that all terminal features can be accessed by using the appropriate escape sequence in a PRINT statement.) The following paragraphs describe each of the terminal operation types.

DISPLAY OPERATIONS

The display operations allow you to sense the position of the alphanumeric cursor, position the alphanumeric cursor, and input data directly from the alphanumeric display memory.

Cursor Sensing

The cursor sensing functions return the position of the alphanumeric cursor and the current display workspace number. The alphanumeric memory is made up of rows of 80 characters. The display can contain from 1 to 255 rows of characters. The display window number can range from 1 to 4. The cursor positions can be requested in absolute or screen relative coordinates. The coordinates refer to the current display workspace. Additional information on cursor addressing is given in the terminal reference manual.

Table 10-1. Terminal Operations

OPERATION	DESCRIPTION
Display	
CSENA(R,C)	Sense the absolute cursor position
CSENS(R,C)	Sense the screen relative cursor position
MOVCA(R,C)	Move the cursor to an absolute position
MOVCR(R,C)	Move the cursor to a relative position
MOVCS(R,C)	Move the cursor to a screen relative position
DSPIN\$(L,X)	Input data directly from the display
Keyboard	
GETKBD OFF	Disable the GETKBD function
GETKBD ON	Enable the GETKBD function
OFF KEY #	Disable the selected key
ON KEY #	Enable the selected key
GETKBD(X)	Get keyboard input directly
PROC\$(X)	Process keycodes
KEYCDE(X,N,C)	Redefine keys to new keycodes
Data Communications	
GETDCM OFF	Disable the GETDCM function
GETDCM ON	Enable the GETDCM function
GETDCM(S\$)	Get datacomm input directly
PUTDCM(S\$)	Send datacomm output directly
Program Control	
COMMAND	Output terminal commands
ERRL	Line number of error
ERRN	Error number
ERROR	Define program error condition
FRE	Report program and variable storage
ON ERROR	Branch on error conditions
RESUME	Continue program after error recovery
SLEEP	Set BASIC to a dormant state
WAKEUP	Restore BASIC to active state

Absolute Sensing

The CSENA(R,C) function returns the absolute cursor position. The function parameters must be numeric variables. The first variable specified is set to the row number (1 to 255) and the second to the column number (1 to 80). The value of the function is set to the number of the current display workspace (1 to 4).

Examples:

```
10 A=CSENA(P(I),Q(J))
20 Window=CSENA(R,C)
```

Screen Relative Sensing

The CSENS(R,C) function returns the screen relative cursor position. The function parameters must be numeric variables. The first variable specified is set to the row number and the second variable is set to the column number. The value of the function is set to the number of the current display workspace.

Examples:

```
10 B=CSENS(A(1),B(1))
20 W=CSENS(R,C)
```

Cursor Positioning

The alphanumeric cursor can be positioned in the current display workspace using absolute, screen relative, or cursor relative coordinates. The cursor positioning functions are used only in PRINT statements and do not return a value.

Absolute Cursor Positioning

The MOVCA(R,C) function can be used to position the alphanumeric cursor to any character position in the current display workspace. R defines the destination row and C defines the destination column. Both R and C must be numeric expressions and are rounded to integers before being used. The range of valid values for R will vary with the size of the workspace but will normally be between 1 and 255. Values for C should always be between 1 and 80.

Example: Position the cursor to row 5 and a column position given by C=4*Y.

```
10 PRINT MOVCA(5,4*Y);
```

Relative Cursor Positioning

The MOVCR(R,C) function can be used to position the alphanumeric cursor to any character position relative to the current cursor position. R defines the relative row position and C defines the relative cursor position. Both R and C must be numeric expressions and are rounded to integers before being used. The destination cursor position can be anywhere in the current display workspace. The values for R can range from -255 and +255. The values for C can range from -79 to +79.

Example: Position the cursor 3 rows down and 2*Z columns to the left.

```
10 PRINT MOVCR(3,-2*Z);
```

Screen Relative Cursor Positioning

The MOVCS(R,C) function can be used to position the alphanumeric cursor to any character position on the currently displayed screen of 24 lines. R gives the screen row position and C gives the screen column position. Both R and C must be numeric expressions. The values can be between 1 and 24 for R and 1 and 80 for C.

Example: Position the cursor to row 5 and column P+2.

```
10 PRINT MOVCS(5,P+2);
```

Direct Display Input

You can input string data directly from the terminal screen. You do not have to enter data from the keyboard in order for your program to access it. The DSPIN\$(L,X) function allows you to read data stored anywhere in the current display workspace.

The DSPIN\$(L,X) function reads string data beginning at the current alphanumeric cursor position. L is the number of characters to be read (length of the string). If L is positive, the display codes used by the terminal to indicate alternate character sets, display enhancements, and data fields are expanded into their equivalent escape sequences. A brief table of expanded codes is given in table 10-2. Detailed information on display memory functions is given in the Terminal Reference manual. If L is negative, the display codes will be ignored.

Examples:

```
10 A$=DSPIN$(-10,X)
30 B$=DSPIN$(10,X)
```

Table 10-2. Terminal Display Codes.

Escape Sequence	Description
$\text{E}_c \& d @$	End of enhancement
$\text{E}_c \& d A$	Blinking
$\text{E}_c \& d B$	Inverse video
$\text{E}_c \& d D$	Underline
$\text{E}_c \& d H$	Halfbright
$\text{E}_c) @$	Define standard character set
$\text{E}_c) A$	Define character set A
$\text{E}_c) B$	Define character set B
$\text{E}_c) C$	Define character set C
NC	Turn on alternate character set
OC	Turn off alternate character set
$\text{E}_c [$	Begin unprotected field
$\text{E}_c]$	End unprotected or transmit-only field
$\text{E}_c \{$	Begin transmit-only field
$\text{E}_c 6$	Begin alphabetic only field
$\text{E}_c 7$	Begin numeric only field
$\text{E}_c 8$	Begin alphanumeric field

Example: Run the sample program below. It will print a test string and then input the string using the DSPIN\$ function. It will then input the string again, this time checking for display codes. Note the added display control characters in the second string.

```

10 DIM A$(36),B$(36)
20 PRINT MOVCS(20,1);
30 PRINT "This is a test for `Alpha` fields!";MOVCS(20,1);

40 A$=DSPIN$(-36,X)
50 PRINT
60 FOR I=1 TO LEN(A$)
70 PRINT USING 1S0;NUM(A$(I,1))
80 NEXT I
90 PRINT MOVCS(20,1);
100 B$=DSPIN$(36,X)
110 PRINT MOVCS(23,1)
120 FOR I=1 TO LEN(B$)
130 PRINT USING 150;NUM(B$(I,1))
140 NEXT I
150 IMAGE #(3DX,)
```

This is a test for Alpha fields!

```

84 104 105 115 32 105 115 32 97 32 116 101 115 116 32 102 111 114 32
65
108 112 104 97 32 102 105 101 108 100 115 33

84 104 105 115 32 105 115 32 97 32 116 101 115 116 32 102 111 114 32 27
54 65 108 112 104 97 27 56 32 102 105 101 108 100 115 33
>
```

Note that only the specified number of characters are returned and that control characters (` etc.) count as input characters. This means that you could input the same display and get two different sets of characters depending on whether the length parameter is positive or negative. For example, if the string length were 21 in the previous example, the results would have been as follows:

```

L=-21
84 104 105 115 32 105 115 32 97 32 116 101 115 116 32 102 111 114 32
65

L=21
84 104 105 115 32 105 115 32 97 32 116 101 115 116 32 102 111 114 32 27
```

The X parameter is a return variable and is used to let you know if the end of the display line or end of display memory was reached before the required number of characters could be input. The X parameter will be set to "0" if the required characters were input without reaching a display boundary (end of line or display memory). X will be set to "1" if the end of a data field or the end of the current line is encountered before the required number of characters are input. X will be set to "-1" if the end of display memory is reached.

If the terminal is in format mode and the field is larger than the input string specified in the DSPIN\$ function, only the specified number of characters will be input and X will be set to 0.

In the previous example, the value of X returned with A\$ would be "0" since no field boundary was encountered. The value of X returned with B\$ would be "1" since the end of the display line was reached.

Figure 10-1 contains an example illustrating use of the return variable in the DSPIN\$ function.

KEYBOARD INPUT AND CONTROL

Terminal BASIC allows you to control keyboard operation from your BASIC program. The ways that you can control the keyboard are as follows:

The operation of the terminal keyboard can be controlled from your BASIC program. The ways that you can control the keyboard are as follows:

- Disable all key interrupts — (GETKBD ON/OFF)
- Disable specific key interrupts — (OFF KEY #)
- Interrupt on specific keys — (ON KEY #)
- Direct process keyboard input — (GETKBD)
- Process key functions — (CHR\$ and PROC\$)
- Redefine the keyboard — (KEYCDE)

Example illustrating the values of the return variable.

```

10 D1$=CHR$(217) ! Display Functions On
20 D2$=CHR$(154) ! Display Functions Off
22 F1$=CHR$(215) ! Format Mode On
24 F2$=CHR$(216) ! Format Mode Off
30 PRINT MOVCA(10,1); "E[1234567E6ABC[E]DEE81234567"
40 PRINT "E[This is a test."
50 PRINT "E[This is the end!";
60 FOR I=1 TO 3
70 PRINT MOVCA(9+I,6);
80 A$=DSPIN$(12,X);
90 PRINT F1$;MOVCA(9+I,6);
100 B$=DSPIN$(-12,Y)
110 PRINT F2$;MOVCA(I*2,-10);
120 PRINT D1$;A$;"*";TAB(30);"X=";X;D2$
130 PRINT D1$;B$;"*";TAB(30);"X=";Y,D2$
140 NEXT I

```

```

run RETURN
67E6ABC[E]DEE*
67ABC*
is a test.*          X= 0
is a test. *         X=-1
is the end!*        X= -1
is the end! *        X= 0
1234567 6ABC JDE 81234567
[This is a test.
[This is the end!

```

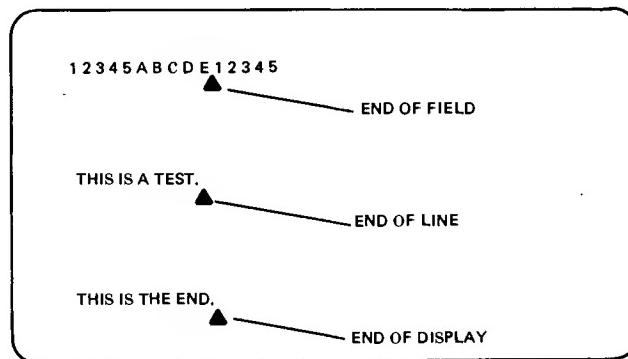


Figure 10-1. Display Input Conditions

Disabling All Key Interrupts

The GETKBD ON and GETKBD OFF statements allow you to enable and disable the GETKBD function. They also disable and enable all keyboard interrupts from the program break character (normally CONTROL-A) or from keys specified in ON KEY # statements. (Interrupt characters received over the data communications line including characters being echoed from the keyboard, are not affected.)

The GETKBD ON and GETKBD OFF statements can be used to temporarily disable special keyboard input processing or re-enable it with a single statement.

Example:

```
10 REM Set up interrupts
20 FOR N=0 TO 9
30 ON KEY #N GOSUB 200
40 NEXT N
50 REM Disable interrupts
60 GETKBD ON
.
.
100 REM Enable interrupts
110 GETKBD OFF
.
(resume)
```

Disabling Interrupt Keys

You can selectively disable interrupt keys using the OFF KEY # statement. Executing OFF KEY #N (where N is the code of the desired key) will disable any program interrupt that has been set up with an ON KEY #N statement. A list of key codes is given in tables 10-3 and 12-1.

Example: Enable and then disable interrupts from the **RETURN** key.

```
10 ON KEY #13 GOTO 100
20 OFF KEY #13
```

Interrupting On Specific Keys

You can cause your program to interrupt and branch when a selected key on the keyboard is pressed. If your program is dormant due to a SLEEP statement, it will resume execution of your program when the selected key is pressed. You can then perform any special processing and return to the sleep state or use the WAKEUP statement and continue executing your program.

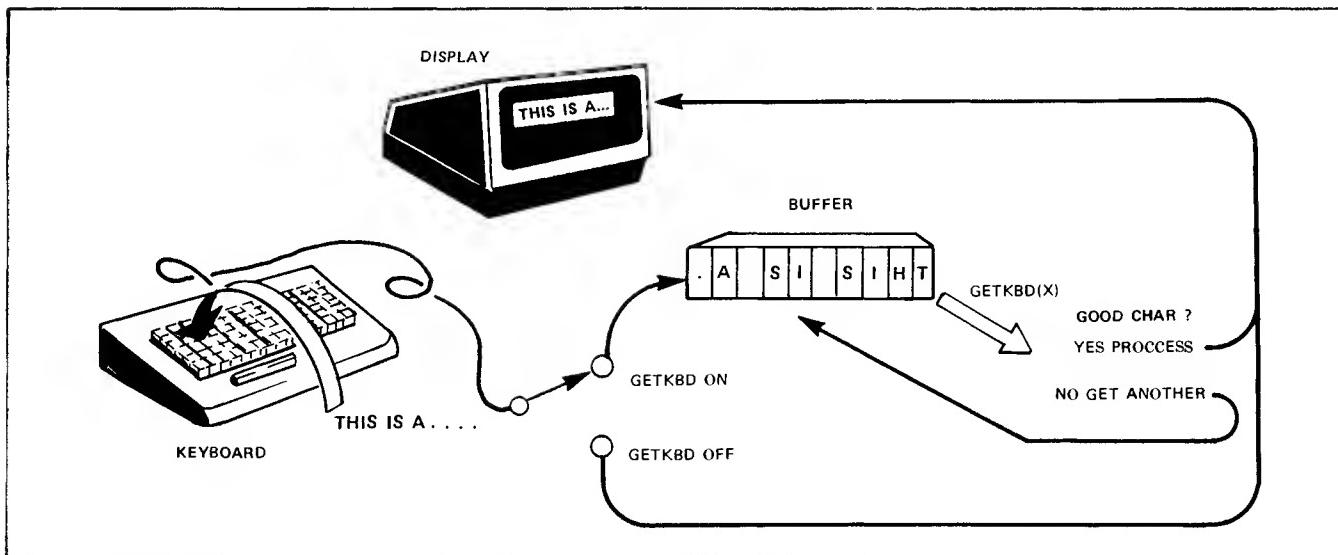
Example: Set up an interrupt for the characters A, B, and C. Branch to addresses 100, 200, and 300 respectively.

```
10 ON KEY #65 GOTO 100
20 ON KEY #66 GOTO 200
30 ON KEY #67 GOTO 300
```

Directly Acting On Keyboard Input

You can intercept input from the terminal keyboard and process the characters yourself. This is done with the GETKBD(X) function. When this technique is used, the characters are not automatically displayed on the terminal screen when the keys are pressed. This means that they are not entered into the terminal's display memory. Control keys such as BACKSPACE, CURSOR LEFT, etc. are not executed. You can use the CHR\$ function to directly force their execution.

Before the GETKBD(X) function can be used, it must be enabled with the GETKBD ON statement. This causes keyboard input to be held in a buffer instead of being processed normally. Each time that you execute the GETKBD(X) function X will be set to the code of the next sequential character in the buffer. The function itself will be set to a value of "1" if a character was present in the buffer or "0" if the buffer was empty.



Example: Perform direct keyboard input and convert all digits to their word equivalents.

```

10 DIM A$(80)
20 A$="zero one two threefour five six seveneightnine "
30 GETKBD ON
40 IF GETKBD(X)=0 THEN 40
50 IF 47<X AND X<58 THEN 90
60 IF X=239 THEN PRINT
70 PRINT CHR$(X);
80 GOTO 40
90 PRINT TRIM$(A$(5*(X-48)+1;5));
100 GOTO 40

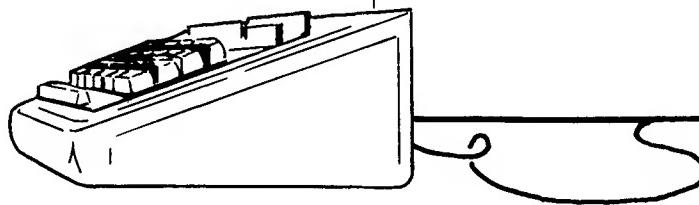
```

DISPLAY

ADD TWO CUPS SUGAR
TO ONE CUP OF FLOUR

KEYBOARD INPUT

ADD 2 CUPS SUGAR TO
1 CUP OF FLOUR



Processing Key Functions

You can process key codes that have been intercepted with the GETKBD(X) function or generated by your program. This is done with the CHR\$(X) function in a PRINT statement. This will have the same effect as if the keycode specified by X had been input from the keyboard normally. For example, PRINT CHR\$(8); would have the same effect as pressing the BACKSPACE key.

Example: Ensure that the first letter of a sentence is a capital. Assume that the beginning of a sentence is defined as “.” followed by a letter.

```

10 GETKBD ON
20 IF GETKBD(X)=0 THEN 20
30 IF X=46 THEN Sent=1\GOTO 70
40 IF X=32 AND Sent=1 THEN Sent=2\GOTO 70
50 IF 96<X AND X<123 AND Sent=2 THEN X=X-32
60 Sent=0
70 PRINT CHR$(X);
80 IF X=239 THEN PRINT
90 GOTO 20

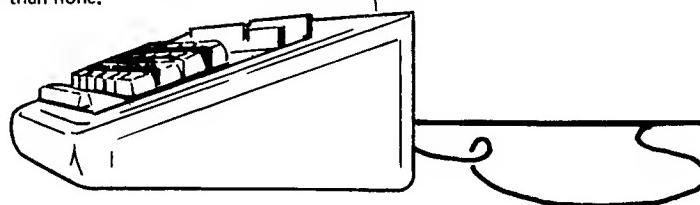
```

DISPLAY

This is short. This is not much
longer than the last. Only a short
test. But better than none.

KEYBOARD INPUT

This is short. this is not much
longer than the last. only a short
test. but better than none.



The statements PRINT CHR\$(205) and PRINT PROC\$(205) will both have the same result since the destination is the terminal. The CHR\$(205) will pass a byte with a value of 205 to the terminal. The terminal uses 205 to indicate a delete line function. The PROC\$(205) will be translated into ***Ec M*** which is the terminal escape sequence for DELETE LINE. However, if the PRINT was a PRINT #1 where file #1 was assigned to the left tape, CHR\$(205) would have caused a byte with the value 205 to be recorded. The PROC\$(205) would have caused two bytes ***Ec*** and ***M*** to be recorded.

Redefining the Keyboard

You may want to redefine keys so that they generate different codes or you may want to move existing keys to different locations on the keyboard. The KEYCDE(X,N,C) statement allows you to set the code generated by each physical key location on the keyboard. You can select up to three different codes that can be generated by each key, depending on whether or not a shift key is being pressed.

Each physical key location on the keyboard is assigned a number. A figure showing the key number assignments is given in section 12 (figure 12-1). A list of the keys given in key number order is given in table 12-1. The terminal maintains a table linking key number to a character code. This code is usually the ASCII code for the particular character. For instance, the SPACE key is physical key number 52 (see figure 12-1) and generates the decimal code 32 (see table 12-1).

Keys are "changed" by assigning a new character code to the physical key location. You can then remove the keycaps and reinstall them in a different location on the keyboard and the result would be a keyboard customized for your application. You can even assign codes outside of the 0-127 range. This may be of use if you are using an extended ASCII character set. You can use character codes with values between 0 and 255. Table 10-3 contains a list of the character codes and keys ordered by code value.

The left and right shift keys, CNTL, AUTO LF, BLOCK MODE, CAPS LOCK, REMOTE, and RESET keys cannot be changed.

The X parameter is used to select one of four possible code tables to be used when a key is pressed. The values are as follows:

- | | |
|-------|-----------------------|
| X = 0 | Unshifted keys |
| 1 | Left shift key down |
| 2 | Right shift key down |
| 3 | Either shift key down |

If you use X=3 to define a code table, the right and left shift keys will generate the same character code. This means that you have access to one unshifted character code and one shifted character code. This is the normal mode of operation. If you want you can use values of X=1 and X=2 to define two possible character codes for each shifted character. If the left shift key is used with a character key one code will be generated, and if the right shift key is used, a different character code will be sent.

Note that shifted and unshifted character codes need not be related to each other. For example, an unshifted "A" could generate the code for a lowercase "a" and the shifted "A" could generate an "@".

A simple application of this feature would be to allow you to access an extended character set without using any special coding. For example, some text processing systems use as many as four types of "-". The single ASCII character may have to be translated into a hyphen, a minus, or a dash. On the computer system only one graphic character is normally used. By moving the "=" sign to the "+" key you can have three possible minus characters on the "-" key.

Example:

```

10 REM Let the "=" sign be a left shift ";" key
15 KEYCDE(1,37,61)
20 REM Let the "+" sign be a right shift ";" key
25 KEYCDE(2,37,43)
30 REM Let a minus sign be the unshifted "--" key
35 KEYCDE(0,98,45)
40 REM Let a hyphen be a left shift "--" key
45 KEYCDE(1,98,167)
50 REM Let a dash be a right shift "--" key
55 KEYCDE(2,98,168)

```

The character codes 167 and 168 were chosen for the two new characters since they are the first two unused character codes in table 10-3. The computer can be programmed to accept the new character codes and convert them to whatever the required code is. If you perform direct keyboard input so that your program is handling all keyboard input, you can simply change the terminal key codes to match the computer's character codes.

Table 10-3. Character Codes and Key Numbers

Code	Key #	Char	Code	Key #	Char	Code	Key #	Char	Code	Key #	Char
0	91	Null	64	91	@	128	*		192	X	One Second Delay
1	109	SOH	65	109	A	129	*		193	39	Cursor Up
2	44	STX	66	44	B	130	*		194	62	Cursor Down
3	28	ETX	67	28	C	131	*		195	46	Cursor Right
4	93	EOT	68	93	D	132	*		196	30	Cursor Left
5	27	ENQ	69	27	E	133	*		197		Hard Reset
6	85	ACK	70	85	F	134	*		198	38	Home Down
7	77	BEL	71	77	G	135	15	Stop	199	X	Cursor Return
8	69	BS	72	69	H	136	79	G Cursor	200	X	Home To Xmit-Only
9	67	HT	73	67	I	137	87	Rb Ln	201	3	Cursor Tab
10	61	LF	74	61	J	138	78	Zoom	202	55	Clear Display
11	53	VT	75	53	K	139	6	Zoom In	203	55	Clear To End-Of-Line
12	45	FF	76	45	L	140	22	Zoom Out	204	80	Insert Line
13	68	CR	77	68	M	141	06	Clear	205	72	Delete Line
14	60	SO	78	60	N	142	79	G Dsp	206	56	Control-Insert Char (Wrap)
15	75	SI	79	75	O	143	15	A DSP	207	64	Control-Delete Char (Wrap)
16	83	DLE	80	83	P	144	7	Draw	208	64	Delete Char
17	11	DC1	81	11	Q	145	23	Move	209	56	Insert Char On
18	35	DC2	82	35	R	146	86	Multiplot Menu	210	56	Insert Char Off
19	101	DC3	83	101	S	147	95	Multiplot	211	31	Roll Up
20	43	DC4	84	43	T	148	95	Axes	212	70	Roll Down
21	59	NAK	85	59	U	149	78	Text	213	47	Next Page
22	36	SYN	86	36	V	150	14	T Ang	214	54	Prev Page
23	19	ETB	87	19	W	151	22	T sz	215	X	Format Mode On
24	20	CAN	88	20	X	152	74	Enter	216	X	Format Mode Off
25	51	EM	89	51	Y	153	105	Break	217	57	Display Functions On
26	12	SUB	90	12	Z	154	57	Display Functions Off	218	*	
27	2	ESC	91	99	|	155	24	Command	219	X	Start Unprotected Field
28	99	FS	92	92	/	156	32	Read	220	*	
29	16	GS	93	21	]	157	40	Record	221	X	End Unprotected Field
30	21	RS	94	106	^	158	48	Softkeys	222	X	Send Terminal Status
31	106	US	95	107	.	159	41	Control-Test	223	X	Non-Displaying Terminator
32	52	SP	96	91	,	160	32	Control-Read	224	X	Relative Cursor Sense
33	10	!	97	109	a	161	54	Control-Prev Page	225	X	Absolute Cursor Sense
34	18	"	98	44	b	162	87	G. Up Arrow	226	X	Enable Keyboard
35	26	#	99	28	c	163	23	G. Right Arrow	227	X	Disable Keyboard
36	34	\$	100	93	d	164	14	G. Down Arrow	228	X	Send Display
37	42	%	101	27	e	165	7	G. Left Arrow	229	X	Fast Binary Read
38	50	&	102	85	f	166	86	Cursor Fast	230	X	Disconnect Modem
39	58	,	103	77	g	167	*		231	X	Soft Reset
40	66	(	104	69	h	168	*		232	38	Home To Protected Field
41	82	)	105	67	i	169	*		233	3	Back Tab
42	29	*	106	61	j	170	*		234	47	Display Softkey Menu
43	37	+	107	53	k	171	*		235	47	Return Normal Display
44	76	,	108	45	l	172	*		236	25	Memory Lock On
45	98	-	109	68	m	173	*		237	25	Memory Lock Off
46	84	.	110	60	n	174	*		238	*	
47	92	/	111	75	o	175	*		239	X	Soft Carriage Return
48	90	0	112	83	p	176	*		240	73	F1
49	10	1	113	11	q	177	63	Set Tab	241	81	F2
50	18	2	114	35	r	178	71	Clear Tab	242	89	F3
51	26	3	115	101	s	179	71	Control-Clear Tab	243	97	F4
52	34	4	116	43	t	180	30	Control-Left Cursor	244	112	F5
53	42	5	117	59	u	181	46	Control-Right Cursor	245	104	F6
54	50	6	118	36	v	182	X	Alpha Only Field	246	96	F7
55	58	7	119	19	w	183	X	Numeric Only Field	247	88	F8
56	66	8	120	20	x	184	X	Alphanumeric Field	248		Data Comm Self-Test
57	82	9	121	51	y	185	*		249		Monitor Mode On
58	29	:	122	12	z	186	*		250	41	Terminal Self-Test
59	37	;	123	99	{	187	*		251	X	Start Xmit-Only Field
60	76	<	124	16	:	188	*		252	*	
61	98	=	125	21	}	189	*		253	*	
62	84	>	126	106	~	190	*		254	*	
63	92	?	127	107	●	191	*		255	X	Display Enhancement Indicator

Notes:

X = Not accessible from the keyboard

* = Not used

DATA COMMUNICATIONS

Enabling the Data Communications Functions

The GETDCM ON statement is used to enable direct data-comm input. This allows your program to monitor the data-comm input buffer directly rather than through the terminal file system.

Note that if a GETDCM ON statement has been executed and you execute a SLEEP statement without executing a GETDCM OFF statement first, datacomm input will not be echoed to BASIC. This means that your program will not interrupt on selected characters (ON KEY statement). You should always execute a GETDCM OFF statement before executing a SLEEP statement. This means that you may have to re-execute a GETDCM ON statement on return to the program from a slept condition.

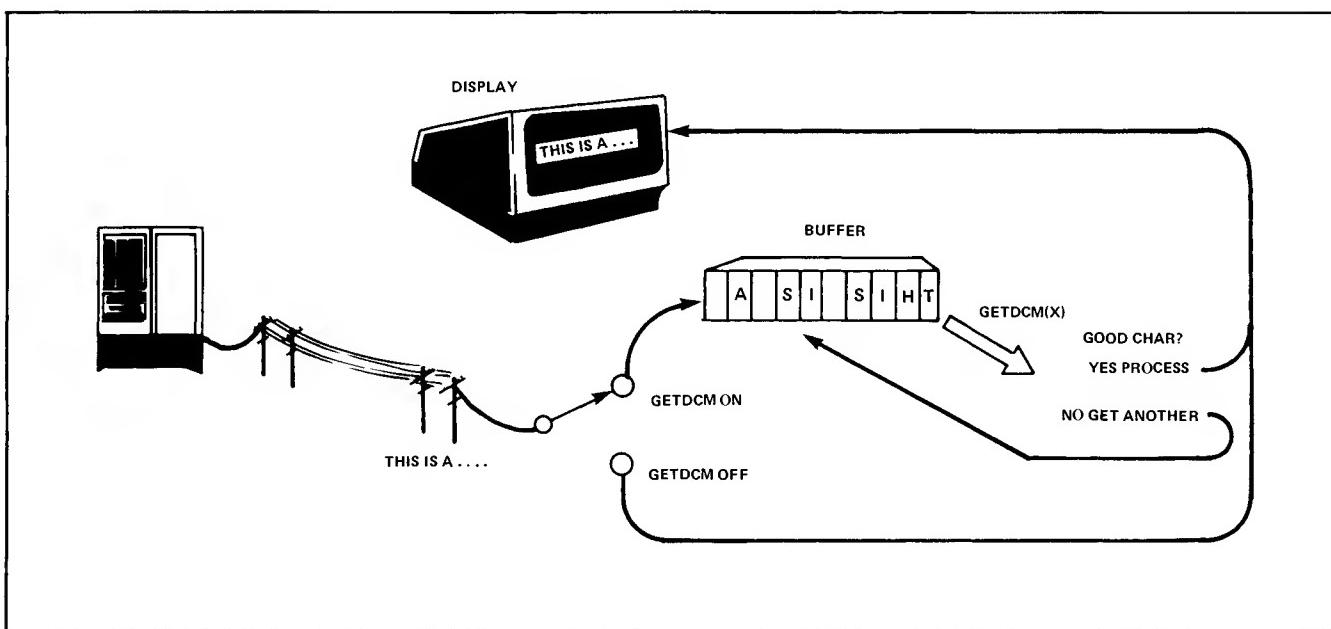
Also, if you have left datacomm assigned to a file number (ASSIGN "DATACOMM" TO #1) without deassigning the file (ASSIGN * TO #1 or ASSIGN "OTHERFILE" TO #1), the datacomm input will not be echoed to the BASIC interpreter.

Single Byte Transfers

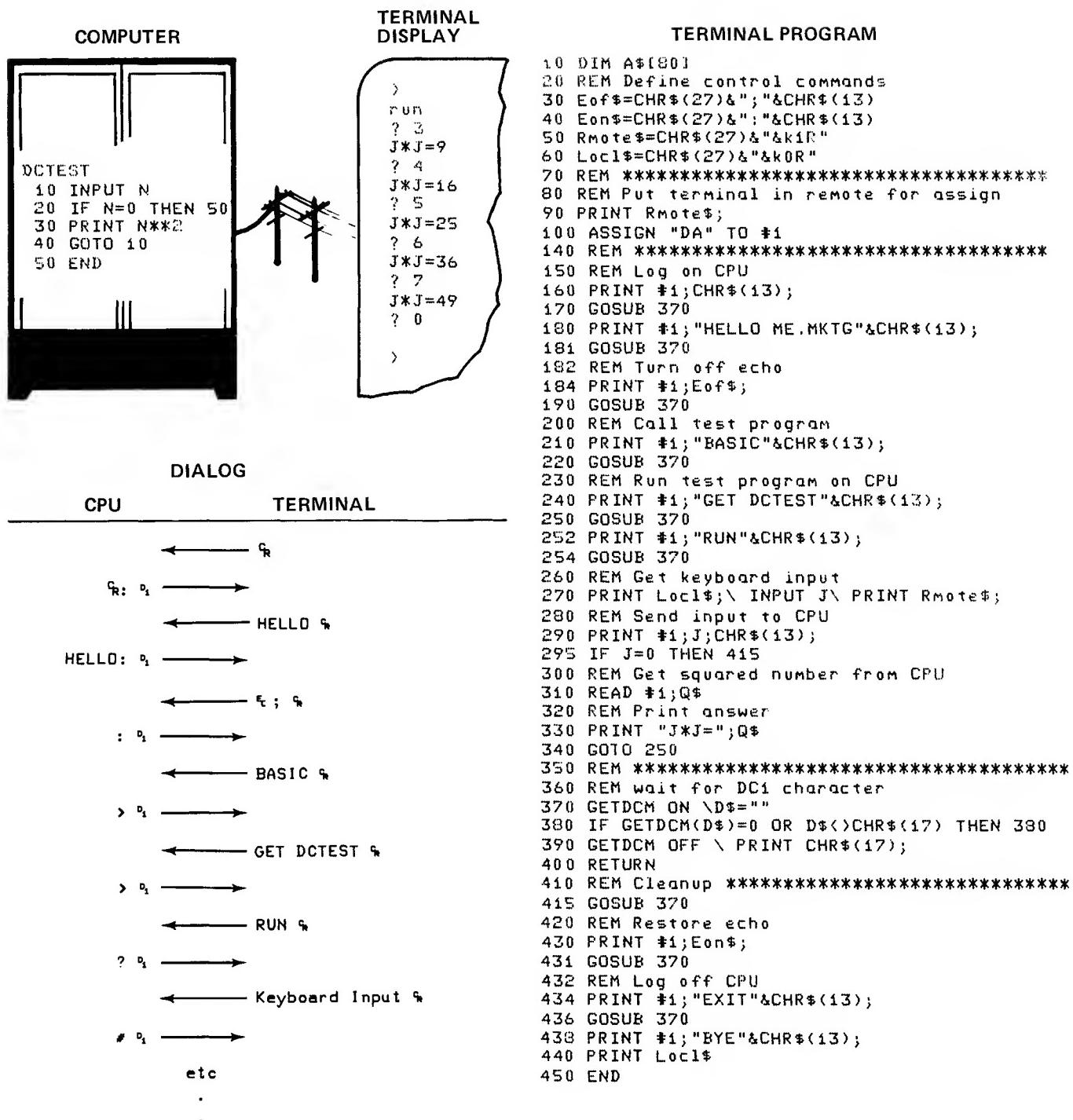
Two built-in functions are used to bypass normal data-comm handshakes, such as DC1 and DC2, to allow you to establish your own handshake protocol. These functions are:

- GETDCM(character)
- PUTDCM(character)

GETDCM is also useful for scanning datacomm input character by character since it returns only one character to the user. Similarly, PUTDCM sends only one character to the datacomm.



The following terminal program assumes a simple program is available to run on a remote CPU. This example is not intended as a guide to datacomm programming. It is intended to illustrate the mechanics of interacting with a host CPU. The exact techniques used will depend on whether or not you are using full duplex, the protocol used by the host computer, and other factors.



PROGRAM CONTROL

The program control functions available in BASIC are made up of the following functional groups:

- Terminal and resource functions (COMMAND and FRE)
- Error handling functions (ERROR, ON ERROR, ERRL, ERRN, RESUME)
- BASIC suspend (SLEEP and WAKEUP)

Terminal and Resource Functions

The COMMAND statement allows your program to access the standard terminal functions to control cartridge tapes, assign I/O source and destination devices, enable or disable edit mode, make direct data transfers, or to request the time from the terminal's internal clock. A complete list of terminal commands is given in the Terminal User's Manual.

The COMMAND statement executes a terminal command just as if it had been entered into the terminal's command channel. The format of the COMMAND statement is as follows:

```
COMMAND <command string> [ ,variable]
```

The <command string> is the terminal command. It may be the command in quotes or a string variable containing the command. If the return variable is used, it will be set to "0" if the statement executed properly, if the statement did not execute properly, the variable will be set to an error code. A list of error codes is given in Appendix E. If a return variable is not specified and an error occurs, the BASIC program will halt.

Example: Rewind the left tape, select the display as the source device and enable Edit Mode.

```
10 COMMAND "RE R" ,X      ! Rewind the right tape
20 IF X>0 THEN 90        ! Process errors
30 COMMAND "A S DI" ,X    ! Make source assignment
40 IF X>0 THEN 90        ! Process any errors
50 COMMAND "E E" ,X       ! Enable Edit
60 IF X>0 THEN 90        ! Process any errors
.
.
.
```

An alternate program would be as follows:

```
10 A$="RE R  A S DIE E"  ! Command strings
20 FOR I=1 TO 13 STEP 6
30 COMMAND A$(I:6),X      ! Output Command
40 IF X>0 THEN 90         ! Process Errors
50 NEXT I
.
.
.
```

Error handling routines are described elsewhere in this section.

Memory Space Available

The FRE function can be used to determine the amount of program or variable storage remaining. The function has the following form:

```
FRE(expression)
```

If the expression is numeric (i.e. N, 5, TAN(X)) the value returned is the amount of unused program and numeric variable space (bytes) remaining. If the expression is a string expression (i.e. A\$, "MEMORY") the value returned is the amount of string variable space (bytes) remaining.

The FRE function is useful to determine the amount of terminal memory required for a given program application. It can be used together with the REMOVE or SET SIZE commands to obtain the proper amount of memory space for your program.

Error Handling

BASIC provides a complete error handling capability which allows you to detect program errors and provide for automatic recovery without halting your program. You can even define your own error conditions complete with your own error code and message.

The technique of error processing is to use an ON ERROR statement to cause a branch to your error handling routine whenever BASIC detects an error condition. Once you are in your error handling routine you can check the error variables ERRN and ERRL to determine the type of error and where in your program that it occurred. ERRN contains the code value of the error. ERRL contains the line number of the statement that caused the error.

In many cases it may be possible to correct the error condition programmatically or to indicate to an operator how they can correct the error condition.

At the end of the error handling routine you can use a RESUME statement to cause BASIC to continue executing the program at a specified line number. If you detect an error that you cannot recover from, you can use the ON ERROR GOTO 0 statement. This will cause the program to halt and print out the error information.

Note that to be effective, the ON ERROR GOTO statement that you use to branch to your recovery routine must be executed before an error occurs. If an error occurs before the branch statement has been executed, the program will halt.

Example: Assume that the terminal is placed in Edit Mode from the BASIC program. The program does not know if a source tape will be used in the edit process. If you enter Edit Mode with the terminal's default source and destination devices and there is no left tape present, an error will be generated by the ENABLE EDIT command. The following program recovers from this error. It will also check to see that the destination tape is present and "unprotected".

```

10 REM Arm error recovery routine
11 ON ERROR GOTO 16
12 REM Turn on Edit Mode
13 COMMAND "E E"
14 END
15 ****
16 REM Error Handling Routine
17 IF ERRN=262 GOTO 36
18 IF ERRN=293 GOTO 36
19 IF ERRN=307 GOTO 23,27
20 REM Can't recover
21 ON ERROR GOTO 0
22 ****
23 REM Protected Tape
24 PRINT "Unprotect right tape, reinsert, and press RETURN";
25 GOTO 31
26 ****
27 REM No tape on right drive
28 PRINT "Insert a tape on right drive and press RETURN";
29 ****
30 REM Wait for operator and clean up screen
31 LINPUT A$           ! Wait for operator
32 PRINT CHR$(193);CHR$(205); ! Clear program message
33 PRINT CHR$(13);      ! Clear terminal message
34 RESUME
35 ****
36 REM Reassign display as source
37 COMMAND "A S DI",X
38 REM If assign error can't recover
39 IF X=0 THEN 33
40 PRINT "Recovery error";
41 END

```

You can define your own special error conditions or change the message and error code produced by an existing terminal error condition. The ERROR statement allows you to set an error code and an optional error message. The statement then forces the error condition. If an ON ERROR statement has not been executed, the error code or optional message will be displayed immediately. If the ON ERROR statement has been executed, the specified error code will be passed to the error handling routine as ERRN. The line number of the ERROR statement will be passed as ERRL.

Example: The following program changes the error message for error code 1027.

```

10 ON ERROR GOTO 100
20 REM Generate Loop Error
30 NEXT I
.
.
.
90 END
100 REM Error code=1027
110 IF ERRN<>1027 GOTO 150
120 REM Change message
130 ERROR 1027, "Incomplete Loop"
150 ON ERROR GOTO 0

```

After the error handling is complete the RESUME statement should be used to continue program execution. The RESUME statement reenables the ON ERROR statement restoring the error trapping function. If the RESUME statement is not used after processing an error, the next error that occurs will cause the program to halt.

The RESUME statement can use one of the following forms:

```

RESUME
RESUME NEXT
RESUME line number

```

When RESUME alone is used, the program statement that caused the error will be reexecuted. RESUME NEXT causes execution to continue with the statement following the statement where the error was detected. If a line number is specified, execution will continue at the new line number. The specified line number must be within the current program unit.

Example: The following program detects errors and then resumes execution at different points in the program depending on the error code. If the error code is 1040, the program will resume at the line following the statement that caused the error. If the error code is 1041, the program will resume at statement 20. If any other error code is detected, the program will attempt to re-execute the statement that caused the error. (Note that this will cause the program to loop forever.)

```

10 ON ERROR GOTO 50
20 INPUT "Enter a number",N
30 PRINT "100/";N;"=";100/N
40 GOTO 20
50 REM ERROR ROUTINE
60 ON ERRN-1039 GOTO 80,90
70 RESUME
80 REM Result too big
82 PRINT "BIG"
84 RESUME NEXT
90 REM Division by zero
92 N=N+.000001
94 RESUME 20

```

Suspending BASIC

You can suspend BASIC causing the terminal to return to normal operation. This is done using the SLEEP statement. The difference between suspending BASIC and using the EXIT command is that the terminal can be programmed to return to BASIC when a particular key is pressed. This feature can be used to perform special processing on data or perform some device control operations and then return to a suspend state. It allows the application program to be activated automatically from the keyboard without the operator even being aware that BASIC has been called. Note that this is not the same as the terminal "SUSPEND" command described in the Terminal User's manual.

There are two ways that can be used to return to BASIC:

- Press the BASIC Break key (normally CONTROL-A)
- Press a key whose keycode has been used in an ON KEY statement

If BASIC is awakened using the Break key, the program is interrupted at the last executed SLEEP statement and a Break message is displayed.

If BASIC is reentered by pressing a keycode that has been used in an ON KEY statement, the program will resume execution as specified in the ON KEY statement. If the GOTO form of the ON KEY statement was used, the program will continue executing normally until another SLEEP statement is executed. If the GOSUB or CALL forms of the ON KEY statement were used, BASIC will sleep again automatically when the RETURN or SUBEND statements are executed. The sleep can be prevented if a WAKEUP statement is executed in the specified subroutine or subprogram.

Note that while BASIC is sleeping, interrupt keys are enabled regardless of a previously executed GETKBD ON statement.

The WAKEUP statement cancels the effect of the SLEEP statement and returns the program to normal execution.

The following examples use the programs described earlier under Keyboard Input. This time the ON KEY statement will be used instead of direct keyboard input. The BASIC program will run only when one of the selected keys is pressed.

Example: Perform direct keyboard input and convert all digits to their word equivalents.

```

10 DIM A$(80)
20 A$="zero one two threefour five six seveneightnine "
30 ON KEY #48 GOSUB 150
40 ON KEY #49 GOSUB 160
50 ON KEY #50 GOSUB 170
60 ON KEY #51 GOSUB 180
70 ON KEY #52 GOSUB 190
80 ON KEY #53 GOSUB 200
90 ON KEY #54 GOSUB 210
100 ON KEY #55 GOSUB 220
110 ON KEY #56 GOSUB 230
120 ON KEY #57 GOSUB 240
130 X=57
140 SLEEP
150 X=X-1
160 X=X-1
170 X=X-1
180 X=X-1
190 X=X-1
200 X=X-1
210 X=X-1
220 X=X-1
230 X=X-1
240 PRINT TRIM$(A$(5*(X-48)+1;5));
250 X=57
260 RETURN

```

Note that it is necessary to arm each key separately. This is to allow you to determine which key has been pressed. When the ON KEY # statement is used you cannot use GETKBD to get the key that caused the interrupt. By using different entry points (lines 150–240) the interrupting key can be determined. The program is longer than when GETKBD was used but the BASIC program is only active when the 0–9 keys are pressed. This allows the terminal to process alpha characters faster and makes it easier to interface to a remote CPU.

Example: Ensure that the first letter of a sentence is a capital. Assume that the beginning of a sentence is defined as a "." followed by a letter.

```

10 REM ***** arm "." and " " keys *****
15 ON KEY #46 GOSUB 40
20 ON KEY #32 GOSUB 45
25 SLEEP
30 REM
35 REM ***** process "." and " " *****
40 PRINT ".";
41 PRINT " ";
42 IF Sent=1 THEN RETURN
45 PRINT " ";
46 IF Sent=0 THEN RETURN
50 REM
55 REM ***** monitor keyboard *****
60 GETKBD ON
65 IF GETKBD(X)=0 THEN 65
70 IF 96<X AND X<123 THEN X=X-32
75 IF X=239 THEN PRINT
80 GETKBD OFF\Sent=0
85 PRINT CHR$(X);\ RETURN

```


A GRAPHICS LANGUAGE (AGL)

INTRODUCTION

What is "A Graphics Language" (AGL)?

AGL is an extension to BASIC that provides easy to use graphics commands. If you have an HP 2647A Graphics Terminal, you can perform these additional graphics operations. These graphics operations are a subset of the AGL functions available on other Hewlett-Packard graphics systems.

AGL consists of powerful graphics functions that allow you to perform graphics operations with a minimum of programming.

For example, to draw a labeled grid it would take the following individual escape sequences:

```

10 REM DRAW AND LABEL GRID
20 PRINT "ENTER XMIN, XMAX, AND XINTERVAL"
30 INPUT X1,X2,X3
40 PRINT "ENTER YMIN, YMAX, AND YINTERVAL"
50 INPUT Y1,Y2,Y3
60 REM DRAW X/Y LABELS
70 PRINT CHR$(27)&"*m";X1;Y1;"J"
80 FOR I=X1 TO X2 STEP X3
90 I$=VAL$(I)
100 PRINT CHR$(27)&"*1"&I$
110 NEXT I
120 REM SAME FOR Y LABELS
.
.
.
130 REM DRAW GRID
140 REM SELECT DOTTED LINE
150 PRINT CHR$(27)&"*m7B"
160 FOR I=X1 TO X2 STEP X3
170 PRINT CHR$(27)&"*pa";I;Y1;"b";I+5;Y2;"a"
180 NEXT I
190 REM SAME FOR Y GRID
.
.
.
200 REM RESTORE LINE TYPE
210 PRINT CHR$(27)&"*m1B"
220 REM DRAW AXIS
.
.
.
240 REM DRAW MAJOR AND MINOR TICS
.
.
.
250 END

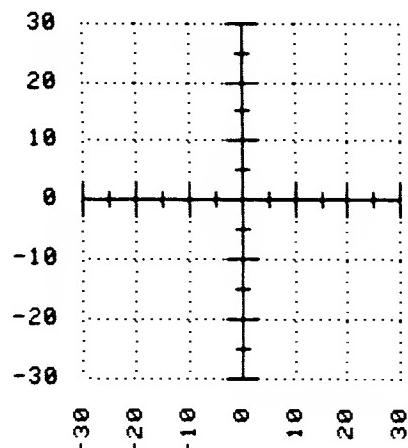
```

In AGL the same operation could be performed as follows:

```

> S PLOTR
>10 LOCATE (20,60,20,60)
>20 SCALE (-30,30,-30,30)
>30 LGRID (5,5,0,0,2,2)
>RUN

```



AGL requires fewer statements, no control characters, and English-like BASIC commands. In other words, it's easier to use for high level graphics operations.

The rest of this section describes the AGL functions available in the HP 2647A Graphics Terminal and gives examples of their use.

AGL TERMINOLOGY

Regions

There are several types of graphics regions used by AGL (see figure 11-1). These regions include the following:

- Logical Address Space (A1,A2)
- Mechanical Space (Limits) (M1,M2)
- Graph Limits (P1,P2)
- Graphic Display Space (GDU) (G1,G2)
- Region of Interest (Viewport) (V1,V2)

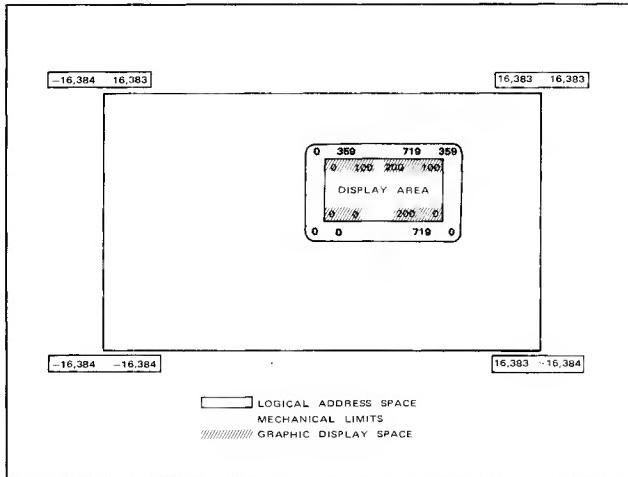


Figure 11-1. AGL Regions

The following paragraphs describe how these regions apply to the HP 2647A Graphics Terminal.

AGL can be used with several plotter devices. Refer to the appropriate plotter documentation for AGL operation.

Logical Address Space (A1,A2)

The Logical Address Space is the range of data values which may be referenced by the terminal or plotter. This is the "logical" plotting area and it may be larger than the mechanical limits described below (see figure 11-1). The logical limits for X and Y values on the HP 2647A are $-16,384 < X, Y < +16,383$.

Mechanical Limits (M1,M2)

The mechanical limits define the physical display area (device limits) of the terminal or plotter. The mechanical limits of the terminal correspond to points in the range 0,0 to 719,359 (see figure 11-1).

Graph Limits (P1,P2)

The graph limits define the desired display area. This area is within the terminal's mechanical limits. The graph limits (P1,P2) are set to default values by the GPON command or to user values by the LIMIT command. Note that these values can also be set with the front panel controls on a plotter (refer to the appropriate plotter manual). Whenever these points are redefined or read by AGL, the following regions are set to the graph limits (P1,P2):

- Graphic Display Space (GDU) (G1,G2)
- Region of Interest (V1,V2)
- Hard Clip Limits (H1,H2)
- Soft Clip Limits (S1,S2)

These points may be set at the beginning of a program to specify an area on the display where all plotting will be done.

Graphic Display Space (GDU) (G1,G2)

The available display in the terminal consists of an area 200 x 100 graphic display units (GDU's) in size. These units are used to refer to a logical display space (see figure 11-2).

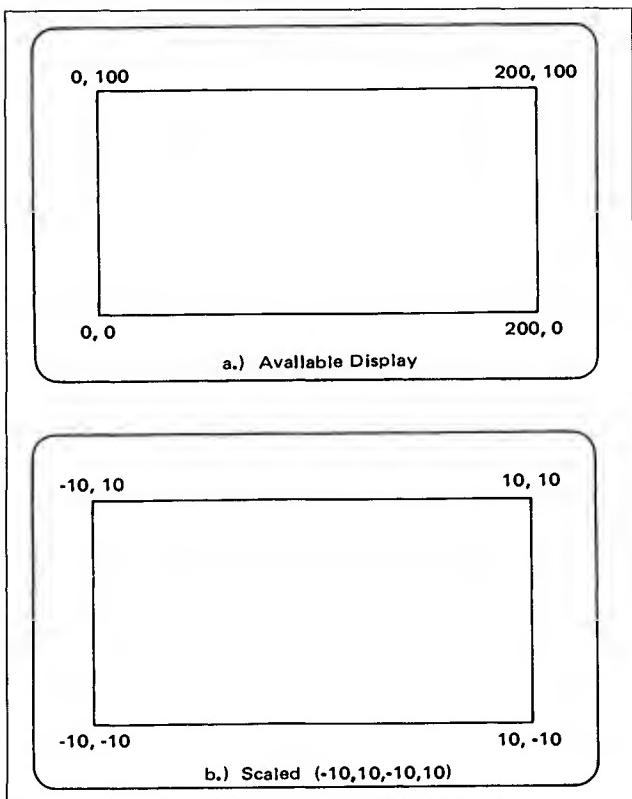
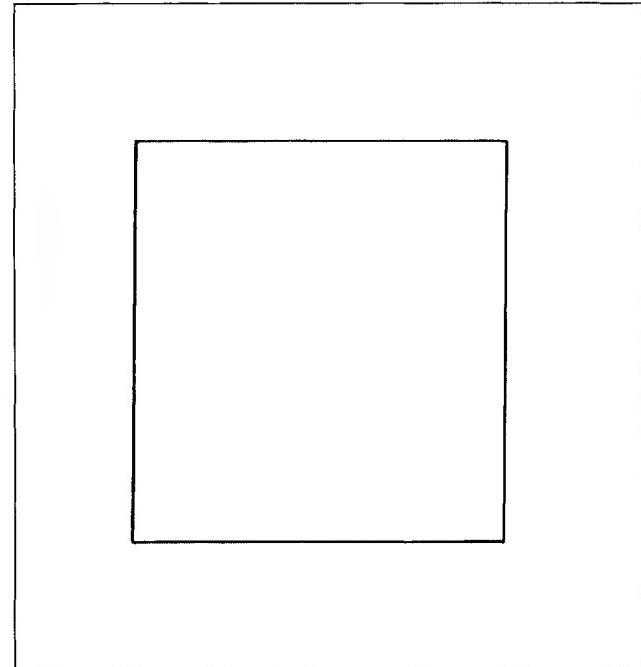


Figure 11-2. Graphic Display Space

GDU's are used in the LOCATE command to describe the display, independent of the data values displayed.

Example:

```
> 5 PLOTR
>10 LOCATE <10,70,20,70>
>20 SCALE <-10,10,-10,10>
>30 FRAME
>RUN
```



The values of H1 and H2 define the limits of GDU space. H1 and H2 specify the hard clip region to which all plotting is confined. This space is defined such that the point 0,0 in GDU's is mapped to H1. This point is referred to as G1. Thus, each time H1 and H2 are changed, GDU space is redefined and the new G1,G2 points (limits) are set equal to H1 and H2.

AGL maintains the points G1,G2 and the scaling necessary to map GDU's to the display automatically. When using AGL, you will always plot using GDU's or UDU's (user defined units).

Region of Interest (Viewport) (V1,V2)

This is a rectangular area into which your data is plotted. You can define this region of interest with the LOCATE or MARGIN commands. Whenever points V1,V2 are changed, the soft clipping limits are also set (S1=V1 and S2=V2). See "Soft Clip Limits (S1,S2)."

Once this region has been defined, you can map data to this rectangle with the SCALE or SHOW commands. This region is useful when you wish to plot data in your own units and confine the plot to a specific region in the display. In this case, the LOCATE command is used in conjunction with SCALE or SHOW to allow plotting in user units. AGL automatically maps user units to plotter units so you need only concern yourself with units meaningful to you. Note whenever this region of interest is changed, AGL updates the soft clip limits to the new values of V1 and V2.

Clipping

Clipping eliminates that portion of the plotted data that lies outside of the specified graphic display area. There are two types of clipping limits: (1) Hard Clip Limits (H1,H2) and (2) Soft Clip Limits (S1,S2). Once these limits are set, only data that falls inside these limits is plotted.

Hard Clip Limits (H1,H2)

The Hard Clip Limits define the rectangular area within the graph limits (P1,P2) in which plotting can be done. No marks can be made outside this region. AGL automatically stops plotting at the current hard clip limits.

The hard clip limits can be changed with LIMIT and SETAR commands. The LIMIT command sets the graph limits (P1,P2) and then sets the hard clip limits (H1,H2) equal to P1,P2. The SETAR command reads the graph limits, calculates the proper aspect ratio, and then sets the resulting hard clip limits.

Hard clip limits are intended to clip both vectors and labels. In plotter devices, AGL maps points G1,G2 in GDU's to points H1,H2 which are in plotter units. This results in scaling factors used to map GDU's to plotter units. Not all plotter devices can change their hard clip limits. This results in some labels being made outside the designated display area.

Soft Clip Limits (S1,S2)

Soft clipping allows you to redefine the clipping area within the hard clip region. Only vectors (not labels) are affected by the soft clip limits. This allows plotted data to be clipped within the soft clip boundaries, while allowing labels and titles to be outside these boundaries. The soft clip limits can be changed and redefined at many points throughout an application program. S1 and S2 must lie within (or coincide with) the hard clip limits H1,H2. If you try to place S1 or S2 outside the hard clip region, the intersection of these regions is stored by AGL as the soft clip region. If the hard and soft clip regions do not intersect or these regions intersect as a line, an error message will be printed and no plotting will appear on the graphic device.

The Effect Of AGL Commands On Graphic Regions

Table 11-1 contains a list of AGL commands and their effect on the various regions described previously. Each command affects the regions in a different way.

Units

AGL has the capability to use three unit systems:

- User Defined Units (UDU's)
- Graphic Display Units (GDU's)
- Metric Units

User Defined Units (UDU's)

This system defines the units used in your application. These units are automatically scaled and translated to machine units by AGL. You can switch between unit systems at different points in your application program. This allows you to plot in units that you understand.

A Graphics Language

Table 11-1. The Effect Of AGL Commands On The Graphic Regions

COMMANDS REGIONS	GPON(1)	LIMIT	GPON(2)	SETAR	GPON(3)	LOCATE MARGIN	CLIP
MECHANI- CAL (M1,M2)							
GRAPH (P1,P2)	SETS DEFAULT	SETS USER SPEC	READS DEVICE	FROM			
HARDCLIP (H1,H2) (NOTE 1)		SETS H1=P1 H2=P2	COMPUTE H1,H2 USING P1,P2				
GRAPHIC DISPLAY (G1,G2) (NOTE 2)		SETS G1=H1 G2=H2					
REGION of INTEREST (V1,V2)		SETS V1=G1 V2=G2		SETS V1,V2 TO USER SPEC			
SOFT CLIP (S1,S2) (NOTE 3)		SETS S1=V1 S2=V2 SOFT CLIP ON		SETS S1=V1 S2=V2 TO USER SPEC SOFT CLIP ON			
NOTES:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The device driver tries to set the device hard clip limits to H1,H2. 2. GDU space is mapped to G1, G2 by computing appropriate scale factors to be used by AGL in GDU plotting. These scale factors transform GDU's to device dependent machine units. 3. Soft clipping occurs only when soft clipping has been turned on. 						

Graphic Display Units (GDU's)

Graphic Display Units (GDU's) are defined as being one percent of the length of the shortest side of the space bounded by the hard clip limits (H1,H2). Thus the short side is 100 GDU's in length, and the long side is

$$= (100 \text{ GDU's}) * (\text{Long side} / \text{short side}).$$

Once the hard clip limits have been established with the LIMIT or SETAR commands, the GDU system is automatically scaled to the hard clip boundaries. Figure 11-3 shows the drawing area defined in the GDU system.

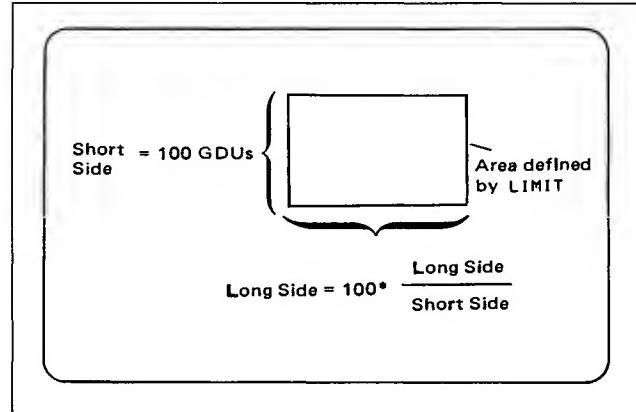


Figure 11-3. Graphic Display Units (GDU's)

Metric Units

The basic unit of distance in the METRIC mode is the millimeter. This mode defines user units so that functions plotted are scaled to millimeters. This mode is useful in drafting applications to plot physically scaled drawings. Metric units are turned on by the MSCALE command. When plotting to the terminal display, drawings may be distorted slightly due to round off errors.

Other Terms

Additional terms are defined where used in the command descriptions that follow.

FUNCTION GROUPS

The AGL functions can be separated into four groups:

- Set-Up Functions
- Plotting Functions
- Axis and Labeling Functions
- Interactive Functions

Table 11-2 contains a list of the AGL functions. The remaining paragraphs in this section provide detailed descriptions of the functions.

Note: The AGL functions are described for the HP 2647A Graphics Terminal. Functions whose operations vary on other graphic devices are also noted.

FUNCTION SYNTAX

The general form for all functions is:

```
keyword (P1,P2,P3,...Pn)
```

Where keyword = Function name

Pn = Numeric expressions or variables

Parameters are read left to right. Missing parameters are assigned default values where possible. Refer to the function descriptions for the default values for the various functions. Arrays and strings cannot be used as parameters.

Examples:

```
>10 X = 3
>20 Y = -10
>30 Npen = 2
>40 PLOT (X,Y,Npen)
```

This would read the X coordinate as 3, the Y coordinate as -10, and the pen parameter as 2 (lift after the plot).

```
>10 PLOT (5,10)
```

This would read X coordinate as 5, Y coordinate as 10, and assign the default value for the pen position. The pen default for the PLOT function is 1 (move and then put pen down). Therefore PLOT(5,10)=PLOT(5,10,1).

Table 11-2. AGL FUNCTIONS

FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION
SETUP	
POTR	Select and Initialize Power On Reset Plotter
GPN	Set Aspect Ratio
STAR	Set Hard Clip Limit
LIMIT	Clear Display
GCLR	Define Plotting Area
LOCATE	Define Plotting Area
MARGIN	Define User Units
SCALE	Define User Units
SHOW	Set Up Metric Scaling
MSCALE	Move Soft Clip Limit
CLIP	Suspend Soft Clip
CLIPOFF	Restore Soft Clip
CLIPON	Select GDU's/User Units
SETGU/SETUU	
AXIS/LABELING	
XAXIS	Draw Linear X Axis
YAXIS	Draw Linear Y Axis
LXAXIS	Draw Labeled X Axis
LYAXIS	Draw Labeled Y Axis
AXES	Draw Linear Axes
LAXES	Draw and Label Axes
GRID	Draw Linear Grid
LGRID	Draw and Label Grid
FRAME	Outline Soft Clip Area
FXD	Set Label Format
LDRG	Set Label Origin Mode
LDIR	Set Label Direction
CSIZE	Set Character Size
PLOTTING	
PENUP/PENDN	Lift/Drop "Pen"
PEN	Select a "Pen"
LINE	Select Dash Pattern
PLOT	Absolute Plotting
MOVE	Absolute Move
DRAW	Absolute Draw
RPLOT	Relative Plotting
IPLOT	Incremental Plot
PDIR	Plot Direction (for RPLOT and IPLOT)
PORG	Set Relocatable Origin
INTERACTIVE	
WHERE	Read Pen Position
POINT	Set Cursor Position
CURSOR	Read Cursor Position
DIGITIZE	Read Cursor with Wait
GPMM	mm to GDU Conversion
DSIZE	Return Size to Data
DSTAT	Display Status
GSTAT	Graphics Package Status

SET-UP FUNCTIONS

POTR

POTR [(LU#, action [, HPIB [, LOGLU]]])]

Where: LU# = the logical unit number of the plotting device. Default is 0 which is the terminal.

action = one of five possible device operations described below. Default is 1 which selects and initializes the new plotting device.

HPIB = the address of the output (plotting) device. Default is equalled to the assigned LU#. If LU# is 0, then HPIB is ignored.

LOGLU = the logical unit number of the Log device. Default is 0 which ignores the Log device assignment. IF the LU# is 0 then the LOGLU# is ignored.

The PLOTR statement must be used to initialize AGL. PLOTR selects and initializes the plotting or display device to be used. The default units are GDU's. This can be changed using the SETUU, SCALE, SHOW, or MSCALE statements. You can select one of five device operations by specifying one of the following actions:

- 0: Terminates use of device.
- 1: Default. Selects new device and initializes (level 2A of GPON). A clear operation (GCLR) is not performed. No buffering.
- 2: Resumes use of device (no initialize).
- 3: Suspends device.
- 4: Same as action 1 above. On other plotting devices this may select a device with data buffering.

The HPIB parameter is the HP-IB address of the output device. This parameter is ignored if the LU# is 0. If an LU# has not previously been assigned, the HPIB parameter will be assigned to the logical unit number.

The LOGLU parameter selects the Log (write only) device. This parameter is only used when the LU# is not 0.

The default values for the parameters are:

LU# = 0 (Display)

ACTION = 1

HPIB = 0 if LU# = 0 else HPIB = LU#

LOGLU = 0

Example:

```
>10 PLOTR (1,0)
>20 PLOTR (A,L)
>30 PLOTR (A+B,C-1)
```

GPON

GPON [(<level>)]

The GPON function is defined as the "Power-On" reset level of the plotting device, where level is one of the following:

Level 1: Sets Graph Limits P1,P2 to the (device-dependent) default values and performs all Level 2 and 3 operations.

Level 2: Clears display (paper-moving devices do not advance paper). If the level is not specified, GPON(2) is used.

Level 2A: Reads the hardware Graph Limits (P1,P2) in MU's. This level is used by the PLOTR and SETAR statements when no parameters are given.

Level 2B: Sets the hard clip limits H1,H2 equal to P1,P2. This level is used by the LIMIT statement.

Level 2C: Sets the hard clip limits H1,H2 independent of P1,P2. Calculates GDU to machine unit scale factors by mapping G1,G2 to H1,H2. Also, sets the hard clip limits of the device to H1,H2. P1 and P2 are not affected. This level is used by SETAR when parameters are given.

Selects Pen 1

Puts the pen up at the HOME (0,0 GDU) position.
Updating of the relocatable origin is enabled (see PORG).
Sets relocatable origin to (0,0) GDU's.
Performs all Level 3 operations.

Level 3: Gets address space information needed by plotting package.

Sets S1= V1= (0,0) GDU's, and S2= V2= "G2" in GDU's.
Sets user units = GDU's (i.e., U1= V1; U2= V2).

Puts the "pen" up, without moving it.
Selects solid lines. This does not affect the device line flag.
Selects standard character set.

Selects LORG (1) (left-justified labeling).
Sets labeling direction to left-to-right (LDIR (0)).
Clears any error conditions.

CSIZE is set to the device default value.
FXD(0,0) is executed.
Current units are set to GDU's.

Sets PDIR argument to zero degrees.
On devices with only one pen, the "linetype called" flag is reset.
The "soft clipping" flag is set (turns clipping on).

Note: The levels 2A, 2B, and 2C above are not attainable by a parameter in the GPON statement. They are used by the PLOTR, SETAR, and LIMIT commands.

Examples:

```
10 GPON
20 GPON (3)
30 GPON (N)
```

SETAR

SETAR [(<aspect ratio>)]

The set aspect ratio (SETAR) function maintains the height and width ratio of the plotted data from one device to another. The hard clip limits H1,H2 and GDU limits are reset so that GDU space will have the desired aspect ratio. This redefined GDU space is made as large as possible within the original Graph Limits P1,P2.

The Graph Limits are read, the hard clip limits H1,H2 are calculated, and the GDU to MU scale factors are defined.

When a ratio is given, the hard clip limits H1,H2 are calculated and a call to GPON (2C) is made. If no ratio is given a call to GPON (2A) is made (see GPON).

Examples:

```
10 SETAR
20 SETAR (2)
30 SETAR (Y/X)
```

LIMIT

LIMIT [(<x1>,<x2>, <y1>,<y2>)]

Where X1,Y1 defines coordinate G1 and X2,Y2 defines coordinate G2. Both coordinates are in millimeter units and their origin begins at the lower-left corner (mechanical limits).

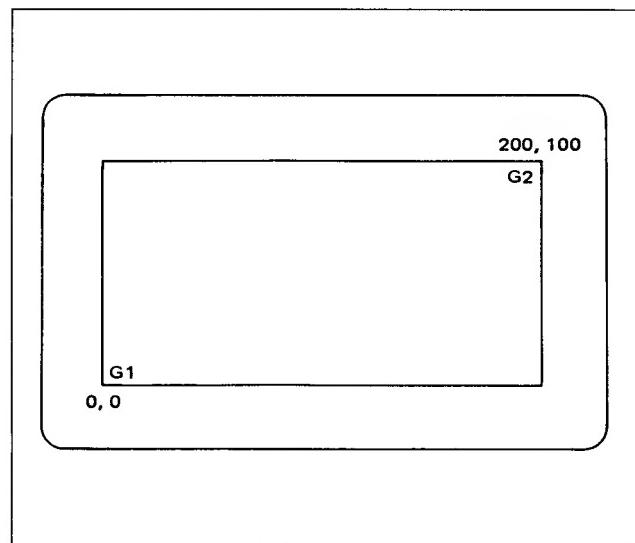
The LIMIT function specifies the display space available for plotting data on a terminal or plotting device.

If no coordinates are supplied, AGL will execute the DIGITIZE twice to allow you to input the values with the graphics cursor. A message will appear in the message window giving the cursor location in MM's (even though UDU's may be indicated in the message). (See the DIGITIZE statement.) The points may be entered in any order. The lower left point will define G1, and the upper right G2.

The LIMIT statement sets P1,P2 to the user specification. It then calls GPON (2B) to reset the Hard Clip limits, redefines GDU space, and restores default conditions. The units for LIMIT are millimeters.

Example:

```
>10 LIMIT (0,200,0,100)
>20 FRAME
```



GCLR

GCLR [(paperfeed)]

The GCLR function clears the plotted display on the terminal or plotting device and positions the pen at 0,0 (in GDU's).

The optional paperfeed parameter is interpreted as follows:

- >0 – form feed (default = 1).
- =0 – no action.
- <0 – previous page.

GPON should normally be used between plots, possibly with GCLR, since it restores the default conditions.

Note: The terminal and most plotting devices cannot advance paper. If the optional distance parameter is used with these devices, it will be ignored.

Examples:

```
10 GCLR  
20 GCLR(-1)  
30 GCLR(N)
```

LOCATE

LOCATE [(<x1>,<x2>, <y1>,<y2>)]

Where X1,Y1 defines coordinate V1 and X2,Y2 defines coordinate V2. All parameters are type REAL, in GDU's.

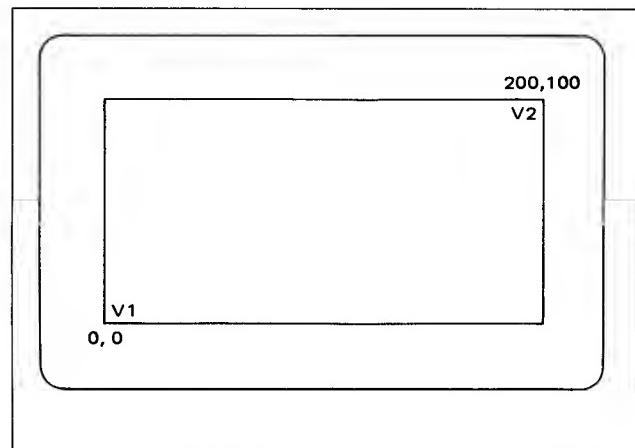
The LOCATE function defines the rectangle on the plotting device onto which SCALE will map, or SHOW will fill, and also (re)sets the default clipping boundary.

LOCATE sets the values of V1 and V2, and also the default "soft" clipping limits S1 and S2. V1 is the lower left corner, and V2 is the upper right corner of the rectangle. LOCATE thus specifies a rectangle which will contain the data transformed from User Units. These limits can be overridden by a call to CLIP (or CLIPOFF). CLIP may be used to separate the clipping rectangle from the mapping rectangle. LOCATE turns clipping on.

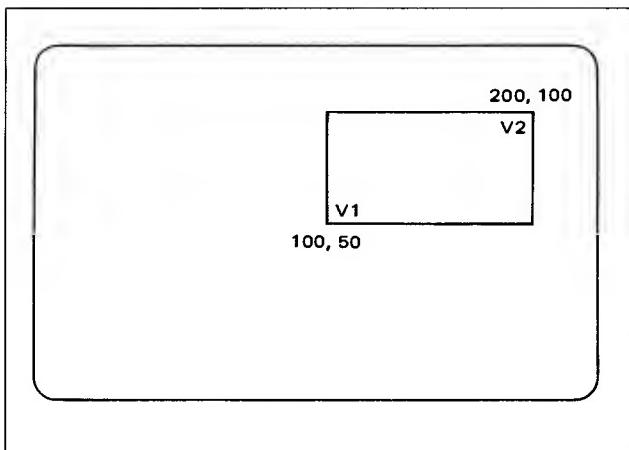
If LOCATE is to be used, it must be called before SCALE or SHOW. If no coordinates are given, the DIGITIZE function will be used to allow you to input values using the graphics cursor.

Examples:

```
>10 LOCATE (0,200,0,100)  
>20 FRAME
```



```
> S PLOTR
>10 LOCATE (100,200,50,100)
>20 FRAME
```



MARGIN

MARGIN (left, right, bottom, top [, units])

MARGIN specifies the LOCATE rectangle relative to the hard-clip boundary (in characters or GDU's).

All parameters are type REAL.

Units are Character-Cell Spacings or GDU's in a direction "inward" from the appropriate hard-clip limit.

When <units> is 0 (default), the spacings are in character-cells. Values >0 imply upright characters (i.e., <bottom> and <top> are in linefeeds, <left> and <right> are in spaces, while values <0 imply sideways characters. When <units> is not 0, the parameters are interpreted as spacings in GDU's (signs not significant).

MARGIN allows the user to specify the number of characters to be allowed between the hard and soft clip limits. The character size in effect at the time of the MARGIN call will be assumed.

Example:

```
30 MARGIN (10,10,5,5)
```

SCALE

SCALE (<x1>,<x2>, <y1>,<y2>)

Where X1,Y1 defines coordinate U1 and X2,Y2 defines coordinate U2.

SCALE specifies a rectangle of user space which is to be mapped exactly onto the plotter space defined in the LOCATE statement. Typically the units and scale factors will be different for X and Y. The values used for X1,Y1 and X2,Y2 are in user units.

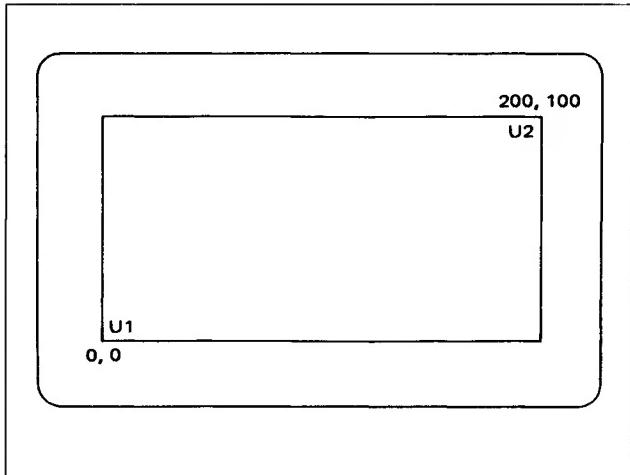
The scaling equation is computed using the current values of V1 and V2 such that U1 maps onto V1 and U2 maps onto V2; then U1 and U2 are discarded.

SCALE sets current units to User Units (see SETUU).

If LOCATE is to be used, it must be called prior to SCALE.

Example:

```
>10 SCALE (0,200,0,100)
>20 FRAME
```



SHOW

SHOW (<x1>,<x2>, <y1>,<y2>)

Where X1,Y1 defines the coordinate U3 and X2,Y2 defines coordinate U4. The units are always in user units.

SHOW specifies a rectangle of user space which is to be mapped into the plotter-space rectangle defined by LOCATE, in such a way that all of the rectangle U3,U4 is shown centered within the rectangle V1,V2, as large as possible, and with no stretching.

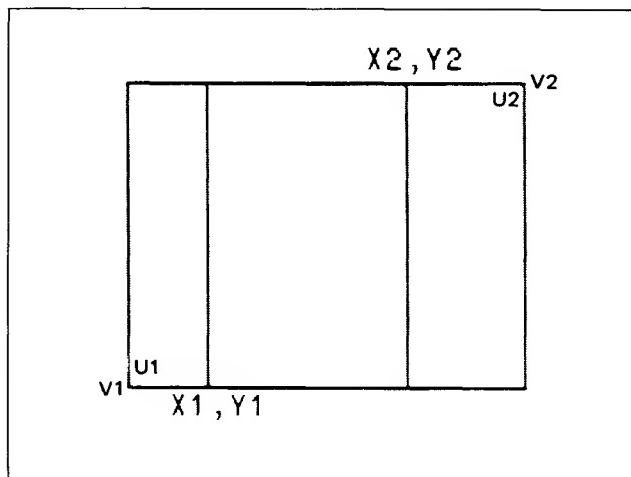
The scaling equation is computed using the current values of V1 and V2; then U3 and U4 are discarded. SHOW sets current units to User units (calls SETUU). The same user units normally apply in both X and Y (as is the case in drafting or other geometric applications). SHOW ensures that X and Y scaling factors are matched, thus eliminating distortions.

In practice, SHOW will cause a larger user-space rectangle U1,U2 to be mapped onto V1, V2. CLIP may be used to restrict the visible data to the same values used by SHOW, if desired.

If LOCATE is to be used, it must be called prior to SHOW.

Example:

```
> 5 PLOTR
>10 LOCATE (10,45,20,60)
>25 CLIP (20,45,20,60)
>20 SHOW (20,45,20,60)
>15 FRAME
>30 FRAME
>RUN
```



MSCALE

MSCALE (< x reference>, <y reference>)

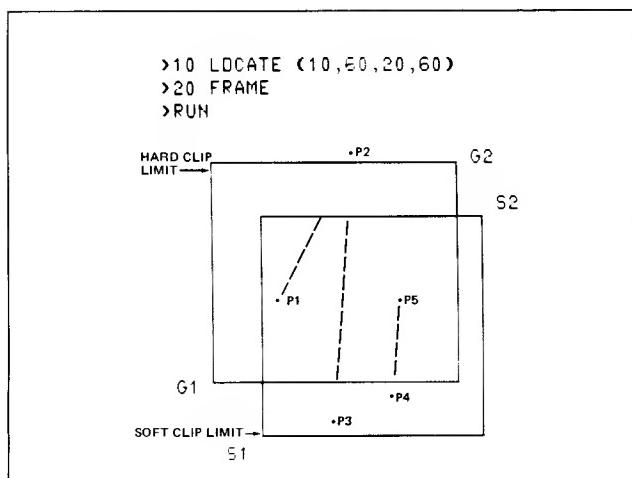
The MSCALE function causes AGL to accept X,Y values in millimeters. The origin (0,0) is offset from the hard clip corner G1 by the x and y reference values. The reference point need not be inside the G1,G2 rectangle. The X and Y parameter values must be in millimeters.

CLIP

CLIP (X1,X2,Y1,Y2)

CLIP redefines the soft clip limits. X1,Y1 defines point S1 and X2,Y2 defines point S2 in current units. The CLIP statement also turns on the soft clipping operation (see CLIPON).

Example: A sequence of pen down plots to points P1, P2,...P5 would leave the plot as shown below:



If part of the soft-clip region falls outside the hard-clip limit, the soft-clip limits will be redefined to correspond to the intersection of the regions. If there is no intersection between the regions, an error will occur.

CLIPOFF/CLIPON

CLIPOFF

or

CLIPON

CLIPOFF turns off soft-clipping, but retains the limit values. This allows positioning the “pen” anywhere in the display space defined by G1 and G2 while in user-defined units.

CLIPON restores soft clipping.

Clipping is also restored by executing PLOTR, LIMIT, LOCATE, GPON(3), or CLIP. SCALE and SHOW do not affect clipping.

SETGU/SETUU

SETGU

or

SETUU

SETGU selects graphic display units (GDU's) and SETUU selects user-defined units (UDU's). Several graphic functions interpret their parameters based on the units currently selected. These two functions provide the mechanism for setting the current mode.

Graphic Display Units (GDU's) are primarily intended as a device-independent coordinate system used for positioning items on the display. Simple programs can leave the mode set to “user”.

AXIS AND LABELING FUNCTIONS

XAXIS

XAXIS [(*x tic-spacing* [, *x origin*, *y origin* [, *x major count* [, *tic size*]])]

Where “x tic-spacing” is interpreted in the current units mode. The sign is ignored. Default of 0=> no tics.

The “origins” are in current units. This allows proper placement of axis and tics. The “y origin” specifies the placement of the X axis and the major Y tics while the “x origin” specifies the placement of major X tics and grid lines. The default origin is 0,0.

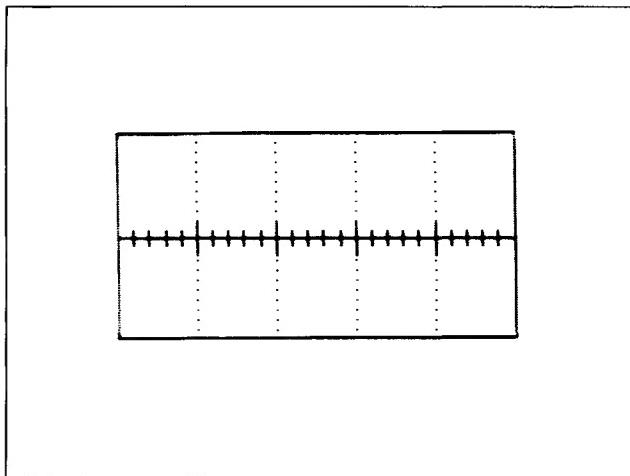
The “x major count” is a unitless integer value which specifies the intervals between “major” tic marks as numbers of “minor” tics. The signs are ignored. The default is 1 => all major tics. 0 => all minor tics.

The “tic size” specifies the length of the minor tics (end to end; tics are symmetric about the axis). Signs are ignored for minor tics. If the sign is positive the major tics are twice as long as minor tics. If the parameter is negative, the major tics become grid lines which extend from one LOCATE boundary to the other. The default tic size is +2 GDU's. The parameter is type REAL interpreted in GDU's.

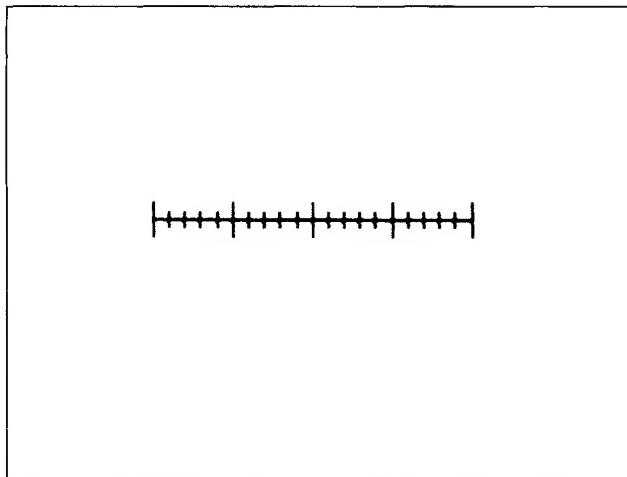
XAXIS generates an X axis at $y = y\ origin$. Tic marks are positioned along the axis such that a major tic mark falls on the origin (whether visible or not); the origin may lie outside the current soft clipping region. Tic marks may or may not coincide with the edge of the clipping boundary.

Examples:

```
> 5 PLOTR  
>10 XAXIS (2,10,40,5,-2)  
>20 FRAME  
>RUN
```



```
> 5 PLOTR  
>10 XAXIS (2,10,40,5,2)  
>RUN
```



YAXIS

YAXIS [*<y tic spacing>[,<x origin>,<y origin>[,<y major count>[,<tic size>]]]*]

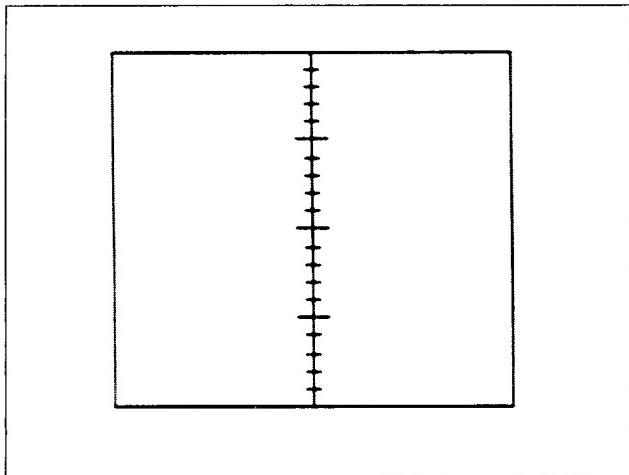
Where all YAXIS parameters are defined as in XAXIS, except in the Y (vertical) direction.

YAXIS generates a Y axis at x = x origin. All parameters are interpreted as in XAXIS except that now all concern the drawing of a Y axis.

It is useful to note that a call to XAXIS followed by a call to YAXIS will generate a pair of perpendicular axes which specify a Cartesian Coordinate System in the current units mode.

Example:

```
>5 PLOTR
>10 YAXIS (2,100,40,5,2)
>20 FRAME
>RUN
```



LXAXIS

LXAXIS [*<tic spacing>[,<x origin>,<y origin>[,<major count>[,<tic size>[,<label loc>]]]]*]

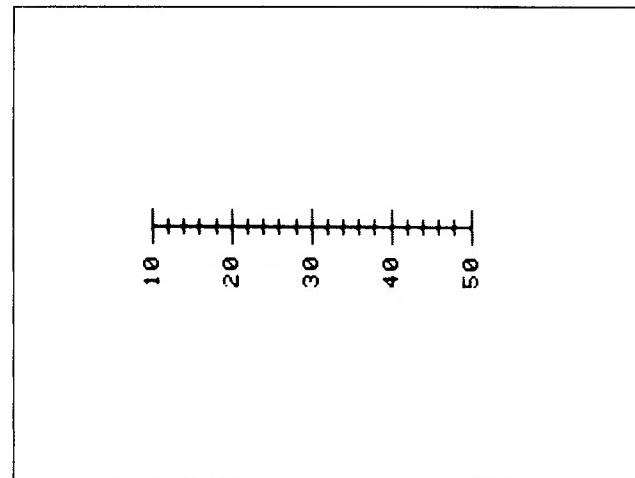
Where the “tic spacing” is used to determine the orientation of labels: + for perpendicular to the corresponding axis; – for parallel. Otherwise, the tic spacing, origins, major count, and the tic size are all interpreted as in XAXIS. The “label loc” parameter is used to place the label relative to the axis. Use one of four label locations:

- 0: label below and outside the current vector clipping limits.
- 1: label immediately below the axis about two GDU'S from the corresponding tic.
- 2: label immediately above the axis about two GDU's from the corresponding tic.
- 3: label above and outside the current vector clipping limits.

LXAXIS draws and labels the X axis in current units mode.

Example:

```
>10 PLOTR
>20 SETUU
>30 LOCATE (10,50,0,100)
>40 LXAXIS (2,10,40,5,2,1)
>RUN
```



LYAXIS

LYAXIS [*<tic spacing>[,<x origin>,<y origin>[,<major count>[,<tic size>[,<label loc>]]]]])*

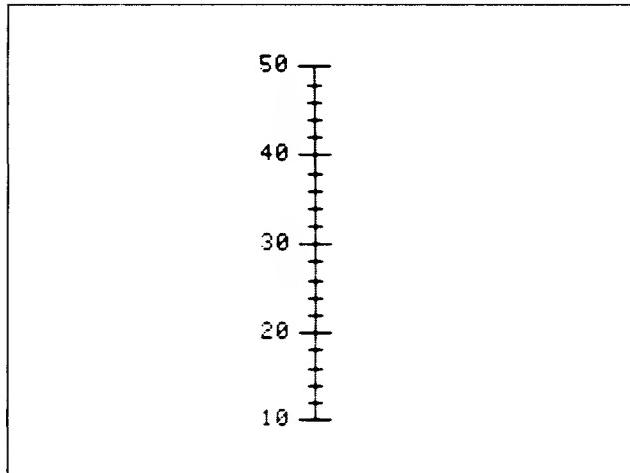
Where LYAXIS parameters are the same as LXAXIS, except in the Y (vertical) direction and the label locations. The label locations are as follows:

- 0: label on the left side, just outside of the current vector clipping limits.
- 1: label to the immediate left of the axis, about two GDU's from the corresponding tic.
- 2: label to the immediate right of the axis, about two GDU's from the corresponding tic.
- 3: label on the right side, just outside of the current vector clipping limits.

LYAXIS draws and labels the Y-axis.

Example:

```
>10 PLOTR
>20 SETUU
>30 LOCATE (0,200,10,50)
>40 LYAXIS (2,100,40,5,2,1)
>RUN
```



AXES

AXES [(*<x tic-spacing>,<y tic-spacing>[,<x origin>,<y origin>[,<x major count>,<y major count>[,<minor-tic size>]]]])]*

Where “tic-spacings” are REAL values in current units. The signs are ignored. Default or 0 => no tics.

The origins are also REAL values in current units. Default is (0,0).

The X and Y “major counts” are unitless integer values which specify the intervals between “major” tic-marks as numbers of “minor” tics. The signs are ignored. Default is 1 (i.e., all “major tics”).

The “tic size” specifies the length of the minor tics (end-to-end; tics are symmetric about the axes). Major tics are always twice as long as minor tics. The size is type REAL, in GDU's. Default size is approximately 2 GDU's.

AXES generates an X axis at $y=y$ origin, and a Y-axis at $x=x$ origin, assuming that these values are within (or on) the current user-units clipping limit. The axes will extend across that same clipping region. Tic-marks will be clipped at the clipping limit.

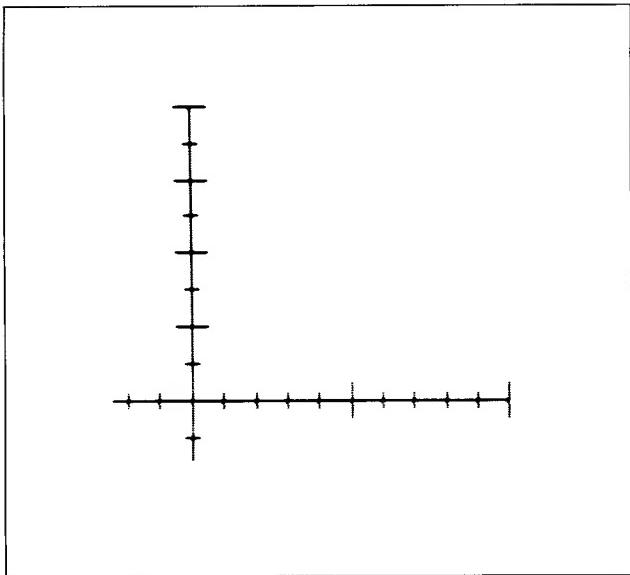
Tic marks are positioned along each axis such that a major tic-mark falls on the origin (whether visible or not). Tic marks may or may not coincide with the edge of the clipping boundary.

Axes and tic marks will be drawn using solid lines and the current “pen” (however, note that selecting solid lines on some displays is equivalent to selecting pen 1).

Example:

The following two calls would generate the axes shown within the plotting region specified by LOCATE (or the default plotting region). Labels in parentheses are for reference only.

```
>SCALE (-5., 20., .8, 1.5)
>AXES (2.0, .1, 0.0, 1.0, 5, 2)
\ / \ / \ /
  tics   origin   major interval
```



LAXES

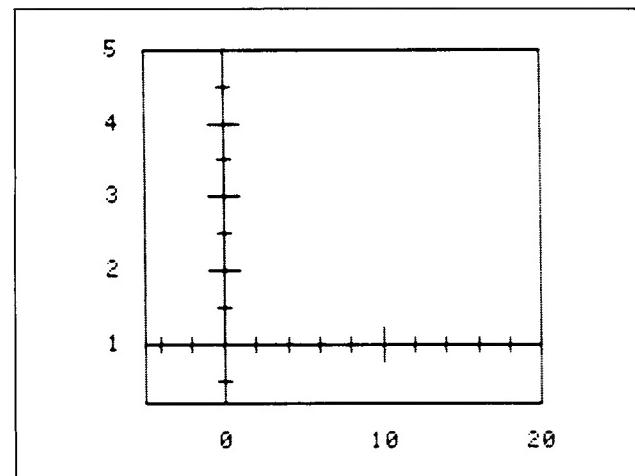
```
LAXES [ ( <x tic-spacing>, <y tic-spacing>
          [, <x origin>, <y origin>
           [, <x major count>, <y major count>
            [, <minor tic size> ] ] )]
```

The LAXES parameters are the same as the AXES functions, except the signs of the tic-spacings determine the orientation of the labels: + for perpendicular to the corresponding axis, and - for parallel.

Each major tic is labeled. All tics are considered major tics if no "major count" is specified. Labels perpendicular to the X-axis will be lettered bottom-to-top (right-justified along the bottom border). Labels are placed outside the clipping limit, and are limited to a maximum of seven visible characters.

Example: The following three calls would generate the axes shown within the plotting region specified by LOCATE (Not the default plotting region). Labels are outside this plotting region.

```
>10 PLOTR
>20 LOCATE (20,80,20,80)
>30 SCALE (-5, 20, .2, 5)
>40 FRAME
>50 LAXES (2, .5, 0, 1, 5, 2)
>RUN
```



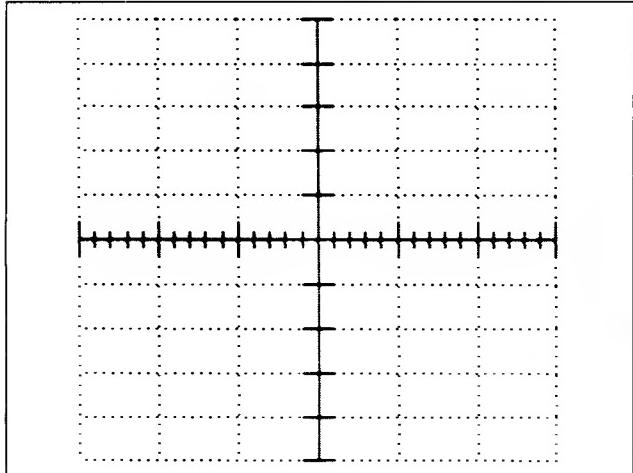
GRID

```
GRID [ ( <x tic-spacing>, <y tic-spacing>
    [, <x origin>, <y origin>
     [, <x major count>, <y major count>
      [, <minor tic size> ] ] )]
```

GRID may be used as an alternative to AXES when a full grid is desired. Heavy lines (LINE(0)) are used for the axes. Lighter lines are used for minor divisions. All the lines extend throughout the current soft clipping region. GRID function parameters are the same as AXES, except that light cross-lines replace the tic-length indications.

Example:

```
>10 PLOTR
>20 LOCATE (0,60,10,60)
>30 GRID (2,10,100,50,5,1,2)
>RUN
```



LGRID

```
LGRID [ ( <x tic-spacing>, <y tic-spacing>
    [, <x origin>, <y origin>
     [, <x major count>, <y major count>
      [,<minor tic size>]]])]
```

LGRID draws a labeled grid and its characteristics are the same as for GRID, except that as in LAXES the signs of X and Y tic-spacings are used to specify the label orientations. LGRID uses units in the number range set up by the SCALE statement.

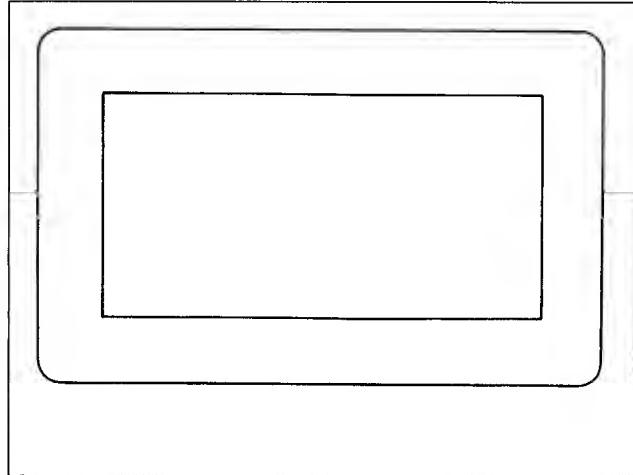
FRAME

FRAME

The FRAME function draws a “box” around the current vector-clipping region using the current pen and linetype characteristics.

Example:

```
>FRAME
```



FXD

FXD [(X digits [,Y digits])]]

Where "digits" is a positive integer. FXD selects the Axis-labeling format. Using FXD(n) causes the labels generated by LAXES and LGRID to be printed in F7.n format. Leading zeros are suppressed; if the number will not fit in the space to the left of the decimal point, the decimal will be moved to the right; when that is insufficient or the number underflows, E7.0 format will be used. The default value for X digits is 0, the default value for Y digits is the X digits value. The maximum number of digits that can be used is 5.

LORG

LORG (mode)

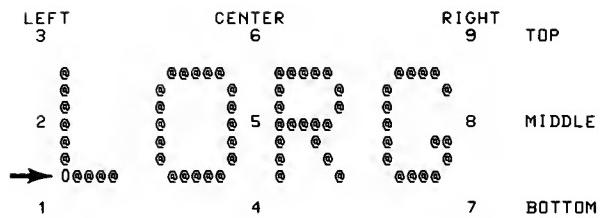
Where mode is a number in the range 0–9. If the number is not selected, LORG defaults to 1.

LORG selects the label-origin position and determines how subsequent labels will be placed relative to where the pen is when each label is received. Labels can be automatically right or left justified, or centered about a specified point. LORG 0–9 indicates the origin (justification and base line) for characters with respect to the current pen position. Labels are output using the PRINT #0 statement.

A carriage return (CR) causes the pen to be returned to its original position, and a linefeed (LF) causes the pen position to move in the expected direction.

If a label is to be left justified, the current pen position is the left margin. Center causes the label to be centered on the pen position. Right justify selects the pen position as the right margin. Bottom, middle, and top select the base line for the labeling string.

In the following illustration, each number shows the initial position of the pen relative to the label when LORG selects a number from 0 through 9. For example, if the label was to be right justified and set with a base line on top of the normal character position, the number "9" would be used.



Label positioning is done by the plotting device. When centering or right justification is used, the labeling string is buffered (stored) until all of the characters in the string have been received. The string end is detected and displayed by a CR or LF. The maximum length of a string when centering or right justifying is 80 characters (blanks are included but CR or LF is not). In all cases, data written beyond the edge of the screen is lost. There is no automatic RETURN when the screen boundary is reached.

The positioning of labels in the various modes should be such that the following two sequences would receive the same result:

```
LORG (5)
MOVE (A,B)
PRINT #0; "ABCD"
```

```
LORG (8)
MOVE (A,B)
PRINT #0; "AB"
MOVE (A,B)
LORG (2)
PRINT #0; "CD"
```

Example:

The period (.) represents the initial pen position; the circle (o) represents the final position.

```
LORG (1)
A = 3.14
PRINT #0; "X= ";A
PRINT #0; "x-axis" . X= 3.14
                                         x-axis
                                         o

LORG (7)
PRINT #0; "RIGHT"
PRINT #0; "JUSTIFY"      RIGHT.
                                         JUSTIFY
                                         o
```

LDIR**LDIR (<angle>)****or****LDIR (<run>, <rise>)**

LDIR sets the lettering direction of labels. In general each device will use the available angle which is closest to the requested angle. Angles are measured in radians.

Since many devices cannot letter at angles other than multiples of $\pi/4$ (90 degrees), programs which use other angles may not run acceptably on all devices.

For angles in the range -90 to +90 degrees, ($<\text{rise}>/<\text{run}>$) = $\text{TAN}(<\text{angle}>)$.

Parameter interpretation depends on number of parameters. If only one parameter is supplied, it is assumed to be the counter-clockwise angle from the normal lettering direction (0 => towards 3 o'clock, 90 degrees => towards 12 o'clock, etc).

If two parameters are supplied, the angle used is that of an incremental vector plotted with arguments X increment = run, and Y increment = rise with X and Y in current units.

Example:

```
40 LDIR (5,8)
50 LDIR (90)
```

CSIZE**CSIZE (<height> [,<ratio> [,<slant>]])**

The character size (CSIZE) function specifies the size and aspect ratio of the alphanumerics or symbols to be drawn for labels. In general, if the requested size is not possible, the next smaller size (if any) should be used.

"Height" is the character cell height in GDU's. Default height is device-dependent.

"Ratio" is the aspect ratio of the character cell, defined as width/height. Default varies with device.

"Slant" specifies the clockwise rotation (in radians) of the character relative to its normal position. Horizontal lines are not affected. The character cell becomes a parallelogram (i.e., 20 degrees of slant gives an italic like character). Units are current angle-specifying units for the system. Default slant is 0 degrees.

Note that many devices are incapable of drawing characters with arbitrary sizes and aspect ratios. The minimum character height may be of the order of 4 or 5 GDU's, aspect ratio may be fixed (e.g., 5x7 or 7x9 dot matrix), and slanting may not be possible at all. You may request size, etc, with this command, but you should then use the CSIZE call to determine the actual sizes for purposes such as computing margins.

Width of character = $<\text{height}> * <\text{ratio}>$

Example:

```
400 CSIZE (10,2,45)
```

PLOTTING FUNCTIONS

PENUP/PENDN

PENUP
or
PENDN

Where there are no parameters.

PENUP lifts the “pen” and PENDN lowers the “pen.” PENUP declares that the following set of PLOT commands describe an object not to be connected to what has been drawn before. Typical use is to do a PENUP before a loop containing PLOT commands. A call to PENDN followed by a PENUP leaves a mark.

Examples:

```
30 PENUP
40 MOVE (100,200)
50 PENDN
```

PEN

PEN (<pen number>)

Where “pen number” is an integer in the range -2 to 4.

The PEN function selects any one of the pens found on the plotting device. This provides you with a convenient way of asking for one of four line types without knowing details of the device used.

PEN “0” selects a “blank” pen (returns all physical pens to holder, or selects a “NOP” mode in a CRT).

Pens 1–4 may be physical pens (presumably of several colors) or may be simulated by using line-types 0,2,3, or 4 (see “LINE”) on a device without actual pens. If LINE has been called since the last call to GPON(2), the PEN statement is ignored. If a pen number greater than 4 is used, it will be interpreted modulo 4 (ie. 5=1, 6=2, etc.).

A device with “m” pens will interpret the <pen number> modulo m.

Negative pen numbers are used for certain device dependent functions as on the terminal:

- PEN (0) is a blank pen.
- PEN (-1) is an “eraser” or clear mode.
- PEN (-2) complements the image along its path, such that a second complementing would restore the original display.

```
PEN(1) = LINE(0)
PEN(2) = LINE(2)
PEN(3) = LINE(3)
PEN(4) = LINE(4)
```

When a negative pen number is used on a plotter, this is interpreted as a request for a blank pen (PEN(0)).

Example:

```
30 PEN(3)
```

LINE

LINE [(<linetype> [,<length>])]

LINE selects one of 8 (0–7) predefined line types. “Length” is a pattern repeat distance in GDU’s. The default line type is solid (0). If a line type greater than 7 is used, it will be interpreted modulo 7 (ie. 8=1, 9=2, etc.). Default length may depend on device and selected pattern, values in the range of 4–10 GDU’s are typical for plotters. On the terminal the length is 8 display dots.

- LINE 0 is always solid lines.
- LINE 1 is always “fainter” than type 0, for example, short or low duty-cycle dashes.
- LINE 0 or 2–4 are all distinct; additional distinct types may also be supplied by some devices.
- LINE types less than zero should not be used.

LINE patterns used by the terminal (3 cycles are shown):

	1 length <----->	
0.	----- (solid)	
1.	- - - - - (dim)	
2.	--- - - - (short dash)	
3.	---- - - - (long dash)	
4.	--- - - - - (centerline)	
5.	. . . (end points)	
6.	--- - - - - - - -	
7.	--- - - - - - - -	

LINE 0 and the standard “fainter” LINE 1 can be used for drawing major and minor grid lines. LINE 0 and 2–4 are used to simulate the four “pens” on devices without color or physical pens.

Devices which support only types 0–6 should map larger type numbers onto standard types 0–6. Since not all devices can allow arbitrary lengths, the device should use the best available length. In some devices the pattern length will also vary line angle (e.g., by a factor of 1.414 for 45 degrees). Typically, pen plotters cannot support dim lines, so a request for LINE 1 results in use of LINE 0 or solid lines.

Note that GSTAT (9,1) will return the pattern repeat distance. If this value is 0, the device dependent default is being used.

PLOT

PLOT (<x coord> , <y coord> [,<pen cntl>])

Where x and y coordinates are type REAL and are interpreted according to the current “units” mode. The pen-control parameter is an integer, and defaults to 1 (moves, then drops). The pen control parameter is interpreted as follows:

```
EVEN: lift pen (pen-up)
ODD: drop pen (pen-down)
+ : pen change after motion
- : pen change before motion
```

Examples:

```
+1 move or draw, then drop pen if up (default)
2 move or draw, then lift pen if down
0 move or draw, then lift pen if down
-1 lower pen, then DRAW
-2 lift pen, then MOVE
```

The PLOT function provides absolute data plotting with pen control. PLOT is the preferred pen moving command for automatically generated data, because the pen is under direct program control.

Pen motions will be clipped as shown under CLIP. PLOT commands will be affected by the current vector clipping limits (see CLIP). Clipping allows plotted data to be clipped at the plot boundary (“soft” clip), but to allow labels to be positioned outside the boundary, typically in GDU’s.

In the typical case, a PENUP command is executed at the start of a program segment, and the default pen control mode is used in a subsequent plotting loop. The first data point plotted will then be isolated from any prior drawing.

Examples:

```
30 PLOT(5,10)
40 PLOT (Dx,Dy,Spn)
```

MOVE

MOVE (<x coord>, <y coord>)

Where X and Y coordinates are interpreted according to the current units used. A MOVE (X,Y) is equivalent to a PLOT (X,Y,-2).

The MOVE function lifts the pen and moves it to the absolute X,Y coordinate. MOVE is allowed to define a logical pen position beyond the normal clipping limits. If the pen is off-page to the left and a label is started, the first few characters are invisible until the pen moves back within the hard-clipped region. Then the remaining characters are drawn normally.

Example:

```
50 MOVE (5,10)
```

DRAW

DRAW (<x coord>, <y coord>)

Where X and Y coordinates are interpreted according to the current units used. A DRAW (X,Y) is equivalent to a PLOT (X,Y,-1).

The DRAW function drops the pen and moves it (within the soft clip region) to the absolute X,Y coordinate. DRAW allows an easy way of drawing a line from the current pen location to a new location without regard to whether the pen is up or down.

Example:

```
60 DRAW (30,30)
```

RPLOT

RPLOT (<x coord>, <y coord> [,<pen cntl>])

RPLOT provides relative plotting capability with pen control from the last plotted point. RPLOT interprets its coordinate values as being relative to a relocatable origin, whose location is the last point addressed by an absolute PLOT, IPLOT, MOVE, or DRAW, except if PORG has been executed (see PORG). This relocatable coordinate system may also be rotated about this origin relative to the master coordinate system by means of a plot direction (PDIR).

Example:

```
200 RPLOT (10,20,2)
```

IPLOT

IPLOT (<x incr>, <y incr> [,<pen cntl>])

The IPLOT function provides incremental plotting capability with pen control. IPLOT plots incrementally from the current pen position. IPLOT causes the relocatable origin to be updated unless the PORG statement has been used. (See PORG.)

Example:

```
30 IPLOT (5,-5,3)
```

PRINT #0

PRINT #0; text

The PRINT #0 statement is used to perform graphics labeling. The current graphics character size, slant, and origin is used. Appending a ";" (semi-colon) will not suppress a carriage return linefeed in the text line.

A ";" should be used to terminate text to prevent a CR/LF from being sent to the terminal display. If the text contains a CR/LF, it will be sent to the terminal's alphanumeric display. If the text contains a null character, output will be terminated by the null.

Example:

```
60 PRINT #0; "This is the X-axis";
```

PDIR

PDIR (<angle>)
or
PDIR (<x component> , <y component>)

The plotting direction (PDIR) function sets the angle of rotation for relative (RPLLOT) and incremental (IPLOT) plotting. PDIR sets the orientation of the local coordinate system explicitly or by supplying a direction vector for the local X axis.

- If only one parameter is supplied, it is assumed to be the counter-clockwise angle in radians from the “right horizontal” direction (0 => towards 3 o’clock, 90 degrees => towards 12 o’clock, etc). Angles are measured in whatever units would be expected by the trigonometric functions of the system at the time of the call.
- If two parameters are supplied, the angle used is that of an incremental vector plotted with X equal to the run and Y equal to the rise in current units.

Example:

```
60 PDIR (5,4)
```

PORG

PORG [(<x coord>,<y coord>)]

PORG defines the local origin for relative plotting (RPLLOT). The X and Y coordinates specify a point where the relocatable origin is to be placed. The values are real and are interpreted in the current units mode. Default values are zero for both. The coordinates given override any previously defined points.

When the PORG statement is executed, it prevents the relocatable origin from being updated by MOVE, DRAW, and PLOT statements. Executing a GPON(2) statement will enable the updating of the relocatable origin by a MOVE, DRAW, or PLOT statement..

Example:

```
50 PORG (50,100)
```

INTERACTIVE FUNCTIONS

WHERE

WHERE (<x var.>, <y var.> [,<pen var>])

The WHERE function returns the pen location to the last plotted point. WHERE also determines the logical pen location and whether it is up or down. If the pen is up, pen status will be a 0; if it is down, it will be a 1.

This function can be used to allow an “isolated” software module to determine the pen position. The coordinates are type REAL and are in the current units mode. The pen status is an integer with a value of 1 or 0.

Example:

```
70 WHERE (x1,y1,p1)
```

POINT

POINT (<x coord>, <y coord>)

The POINT function positions the cursor under program control at the specified absolute location and specifies the cursor type. The X and Y coordinates are type REAL and are in the current units mode.

Example:

```
90 POINT (90,75)
```

CURSOR

CURSOR (<x var.>, <y var.> [<“z” var.>])

The CURSOR function reads the cursor position without waiting for operator input. The X,Y coordinates are REAL values in current units. The X,Y coordinates are the same as for the POINT function. The Z coordinate is a binary valued integer: 1 = pendown and 0 = penup.

Example:

```
400 CURSOR (X3,Y3,Z)
```

DIGITIZE

DIGITIZE (<x var.>, <y var.> ,<z var.>)

DIGITIZE waits for a user response and then reads the coordinates of the cursor. the X and Y coordinates as well as the pen state (plotters) or key pressed (terminals) are returned in the digitize variables. The coordinates are in the current units system. If a user prompt is desired it must be output using a PRINT statement.

The terminal message line will display the cursor coordinates. The coordinates are updated each time the cursor control keys are used. The display is initially in current units. Pressing Control-G.CURSOR will cause the units to be displayed in machine units. Pressing Control-G.CURSOR again will cause the message line to be cleared.

If a terminal is used as the input device, the graphics cursor will be turned on indicating the current pen position. You can then position the cursor using the graphics cursor keys.

Once the cursor is positioned, press any of the ASCII character keys. This will cause the cursor position to be read and returned in the x and y variables. The ASCII code value (0-127) for the key pressed will be returned in the z variable.

If a plotter is used as the input device, the plotter's ENTER key is used to indicate that the pen has been positioned. The x and y variables are set to the pen's coordinates and the z variable will be set to a "0" if the pen is up and "1" is the pen is down.

```
>1 PLOTR
>2 LOCATE(0,200,0,100)
>3 SCALE(0,719,0,359)
>5 INTEGER X,Y,P
>10 DIGITIZE(X,Y,P)
>20 PLOT(X,Y,-2)
>26 READ X,Y
>27 IF (X=0 AND Y=0) THEN 46
>28 IPLOT(X,Y,-1)
>29 GOTO 26
>30 DATA 5,0,0,5,-5,0,0,-5,0,0
>46 RESTORE
>60 GOTO 10
>RUN
>
```



GPMM

<variable> = GPMM (<millimeter value>)

GPMM (GDU's per millimeter) converts millimeters to GDU's. GPMM is a function which returns the number of GDU's corresponding to the number of millimeters specified by the argument. For CRT-like devices, the conversion is typically only an approximation.

GPMM may be imbedded in functions such as CSIZE to allow specifications in millimeters, or may be called once with an argument of 1 to get a multiplier to be used in similar situations. In the latter form it may also be used as a divisor to convert GDU's to mm.

Example:

20 N = GPMM (220)

DSIZE

**DSIZE (<GDU X limit>, <GDU Y limit>
[,<cell height>,<cell aspect ratio>
[,<X resolution>, <Y resolution>])**

The DSIZE function defines the display size available for the plotting device.

The X,Y limits define G2 in GDU's and G1 is assumed set at 0,0. This is the available display space in GDU's. The character cell dimensions give the height in GDU's and the aspect ratio of the current character. The X,Y resolution parameters in GDU's represent the minimum available step-size in each direction.

Example:

10 DSIZE (20,20,h,Ratio)

DSTAT

< string variable > = DSTAT

The DSTAT function returns a string containing the ID of the plotting device. If the device is not available, the DSTAT function returns a null string.

Example:

20 A\$=DSTAT

GSTAT

< variable > = GSTAT [(< Index > [,< Subscript >])]

The GSTAT function specifies the graphics display status of the plotting device. Index specifies a group from 1-14 and Subscript specifies an element within the group from 0-5. The default parameters are 0 for Index and 0 for Subscript. The table below shows the relationship between the Index and Subscript parameters.

Example:

40 N = GSTAT (1,5)

INDEX	SUBSCRIPT	DESCRIPTION
0	0	Pen Position X Pen Position in MU's Y Pen Position in MU's
1	0	Pen State (0=up; 1=down)
1	1	Pen Number
2	0	GDU Space Limits GX1 (MU's) low value GX2 (MU's) high value GY1 (MU's) low value GY2 (MU's) high value
2	1	
2	2	
2	3	
3	0	Locate Mapping Points VX1 (CU's) VX2 (CU's) VY1 (CU's) VY2 (CU's)
3	1	
3	2	
3	3	
4	0	Soft Clip Limits SX1 (CU's) SX2 (CU's) SY1 (CU's) SY2 (CU's)
4	1	
4	2	
4	3	
5	0	User to Machine Scale Factors A B C D
5	1	
5	2	
5	3	
6	0	GDU to Machine Scale Factors A B C D
6	1	
6	2	
6	3	
7	0	Millimeter to Machine Scale Factors A B C
7	1	
7	2	
7	3	
8	0	Current Units Mode (0=GDU's; 1=UDU's)
9	0	Line Type Information Line Type Argument
9	1	Pattern Repeat Distance (GDU's)
10	0	LORG Argument
11	0	LDIR Argument Run Rise
12	0	PDIR Argument Run Rise
12	1	
13	0	FXD Argument X Y
13	1	
14	0	Relocatable Origin X (CU's) Y (CU's)
14	1	

BASIC Syntax

This section provides the detailed description of BASIC commands and statements. Refer to Section 11 for descriptions of the AGL statements.

COMMANDS

Commands can be entered whenever a program is not executing. Some commands can be used in a BASIC program. The commands that can be used in a program are EXIT, and SET. The SET SIZE version of the SET command cannot be used in a program. The BASIC commands allow you to load and store program files, manipulate program listings, establish default parameters for the BASIC Interpreter, execute programs, and to return to normal terminal operation. The available BASIC commands are:

- AUTO
- CSAVE
- DELETE
- EXIT
- EXTEND
- GET
- GO
- LIST
- MERGE
- REMOVE
- RENUM
- RUN
- SAVE
- SCRATCH
- SET

AUTO

AUTO [starting line [,increment]]]

The AUTO command causes the Interpreter to generate line numbers automatically as the program is entered. The numbering will begin with the starting line number given in the command. If no starting line number is given, the numbering will begin with line "10". If an increment is given, the line numbers will be stepped by this value. If no increment is given, the line numbers will be stepped by 10. If only the comma is entered, (with or without a starting line number), the program will be stepped using the last increment used by the AUTO command. (This value is set to 10 whenever BASIC is reloaded.)

If the AUTO command is used during program modification and generates a line number already present in the program, an error message is generated and AUTO is terminated. Entering a Control-A will turn off the autonumbering feature.

Example:

```
AUTO RETURN
10
```

```
AUTO 5,1 RETURN
5
```

CSAVE

CSAVE [range] [[TO] filename] [,SECURE]

The CSAVE command is similar to the SAVE command except that it causes a condensed version of the program to be kept. If SECURE is used, the kept program can be loaded but not listed by subsequent users.

Example:

```
CSAVE "RIGHT TAPE", SECURE RETURN
```

DELETE

DELETE [range]

The DELETE command allows you to delete lines from your program. The range gives the line numbers to be deleted.

<range> = first line to be deleted – last line to be deleted

If the last line number is not used, only the one indicated line will be deleted. If a starting line number is followed by a dash only, lines are deleted from the starting line to the end of the program.

Example: In the program resulting from the last RENUM example, a command of DELETE 15-35 **RETURN** would result in:

```
10 LET X=0
40 END
```

The same result could be achieved by DELETE 11-39 **RETURN**.

EXIT

EXIT

The EXIT command ends the BASIC Interpreter and restores normal terminal operation.

GET

GET [filename]

The GET command reads in a copy of a program from a file. If the file is not specified, the program is loaded from the last specified source device. The initial default source device is the left tape.

Examples:

```
GET [RETURN]  
GET "RIGHT TAPE" [RETURN]
```

GO

GO [linenumber]

The GO command causes program execution to resume after the break character (normally a CONTROL-A) has been entered from the keyboard or a STOP statement has been executed. Execution resumes at the statement after the break occurred or following the STOP statement. If the terminal is waiting for input when a break occurs, the program will again request input. The input prompt (?) or string will also be reprinted.

The GO command is useful in debugging. It will allow you to interrupt an infinite loop, use direct computation statements to display or change variable values and then resume execution using the GO command.

Note that you cannot modify the program while the program is stopped and then resume execution. If statements are changed, you must rerun the program.

LIST

LIST [range] [[TO] filename]

The LIST command displays the current program in line number order. The range parameter can be used to list a sequential block of lines. If no range is specified, the entire program will be listed. The range parameter is of the following format:

<range> = first line to be listed – last line

The last line number is optional. If the last line number is not used, only the single specified line will be listed. If the first line is followed by a dash only, the program will be listed from the starting line to the end of the program.

Example:

```
LIST 30-50
```

MERGE

MERGE [filename]

The MERGE command loads a copy of the specified file into the BASIC workspace. The new program is merged with any existing program. If there are conflicting line numbers, the old lines are replaced by the new ones. If a filename is not specified, the program is loaded from the current source device.

Example:

```
MERGE "LEFT TAPE" [RETURN]
```

REMOVE

REMOVE STD
or
REMOVE STDX

The REMOVE command is used to remove from the Interpreter any commands or statements that have been added using the EXTEND command. REMOVE STD removes the extensions prepared by Hewlett-Packard.

REMOVE STDX removes the PRINT USING, PRINT # USING, IMAGE, CALL, SUB, SUBEND, and HP-IB statements from the BASIC Interpreter. The statements removed with REMOVE STDX provide an additional 5K bytes of user workspace.

Examples:

REMOVE STD

Example: Assume that the following program is present:

```
10 LET Y=0
11 LET X=0
17 INPUT X,Y
70 LET Z=X+Y
71 PRINT X,Y,Z
90 GOTO 17
999 END
```

Entering RENUM will cause the program to be renumbered to the following:

```
10 LET Y=0
20 LET X=0
30 INPUT X,Y
40 LET Z=X+Y
50 PRINT X,Y,Z
60 GOTO 30
70 END
```

Note that line numbers used in GOTO or GOSUB statements are automatically changed to the new line numbers.

Using the same program, RENUM 100 would cause the following:

```
100 LET X=0
110 LET Y=0
120 INPUT X,Y
130 LET Z=X+Y
140 PRINT X,Y,Z
150 GOTO 120
160 END
```

Specifying a statement increment, RENUM, 5 would result in the following:

```
10 LET X=0
15 LET Y=0
20 INPUT X,Y
25 LET Z=X+Y
30 PRINT X,Y,Z
35 GOTO 20
40 END
```

RENUM

**RENUM [new starting line[,increment
[old starting line [,old ending line]]]]**

The RENUM command allows you to change or rearrange the line numbers in your program. If the starting line number is not given, the first line will be numbered 10. The increment is optional and specifies the increment between line numbers. If no increment is given, a value of 10 will be used. Line numbers less than the old starting line number will not be renumbered. If the old starting line number is not specified, the program will be renumbered beginning with the first line. If an old ending line is specified, the renumber process will continue until the specified point in the program is reached. Line numbers after the old ending line are unchanged.

Note that the RENUM command is not used to move lines from one position to another. All that it does is renumber lines, it does not change their order.

RUN

RUN [linenumber]

or

RUN filename [, linenumber]

The RUN command is used to execute your program. If the optional line number is not used, the program will begin executing from the first statement. If a line number is specified, program execution will begin with the indicated line.

When a filename is used, the program will first be loaded from the indicated file and then run. If no file name is specified and there is no program in the workspace, a program will be loaded from the current source file and then run.

Example: Execute the first program shown under the RENUM command beginning at the statement INPUT X,Y.

RUN 17

SAVE

SAVE [range] [[TO] filename] [,BASIC]

The SAVE command stores a copy of the current program on a file. If the file is not specified, the program is stored on the last specified destination device. The initial destination file is the right tape.

The BASIC option is used to save a copy of the current BASIC interpreter. This is useful when the interpreter has been modified using the EXTEND command. The range option can not be used with the BASIC option.

Examples:

SAVE
SAVE "RIGHT TAPE", BASIC

SCRATCH

SCRATCH [string space]

The SCRATCH command deletes the current program and variables from the workspace. SCRATCH can be abbreviated SCR. If the string space parameter is used, the memory space used to store string data is set to string space + 1 (string space must be an INTEGER expression).

Example:

SCRATCH

SET

SET <condition>

where <condition> is one of:

- MULTIPLE
- SINGLE
- SHORT
- LONG
- INTEGER
- PROMPT
- KEY
- SIZE

The SET command allows you to select the default modes of operation for the Interpreter. Only one condition can be used in a SET command. You cannot, for example, enter SET SINGLE, LONG.

The SET MULTIPLE command tells the BASIC interpreter whether or not to allow multiple statements per line number. The SET SINGLE command disables the interpreter's ability to use multiple statements in a line. The multiple statement capability can be reestablished with the SET MULTIPLE command or by reloading BASIC.

When the SET MULTIPLE command is entered, the interpreter will accept more than one statement in the same line. The statements must be separated by a "\\" (back-slash). The line has only a single line number at the left margin as for a normal statement. Multiple statements are executed in order from left to right. The multiple statement capability is initially on.

```
100 READ A
200 PRINT A \ READ B \ PRINT B
300 FOR I=1 TO N \ A(I)=I^2 \ NEXT I
```

The main advantage of multiple statements is that you can save program storage space by not numbering each statement.

Example:

SET MULTIPLE

If multiple statements are entered and the multiple statement capability is not turned on, the entire line is rejected and an error message is displayed.

The SET SHORT, SET LONG, and SET INTEGER commands are used to set the default data type for numeric variables. The last default data type used continues in effect until changed. If BASIC is reloaded, the default type is set to SHORT.

Examples:

```
SET INTEGER
SET LONG
```

The SET PROMPT command allows you to change the prompt character. The default character is ">". Note that only a single character can be used.

Example:

```
SET PROMPT =">"
```

The SET KEY command allows you to select the control character to be used as a local "break" character (a letter A-Z). Entering the "break" character will cause execution of the local BASIC program to stop. The default "break" character is CONTROL-A.

Example:

```
SET KEY ="B"
```

The SET SIZE command allows you to allocate terminal memory resources between the terminal display and the BASIC workspace. Decreasing the size of the display memory will increase the amount of memory available to your BASIC program. <size> is the number of bytes to be allocated to the workspace.

Note that the SET SIZE command cannot be executed from a BASIC program.

Example:

```
SET SIZE = 21000
```

STATEMENTS

This section contains descriptions of the statements available in Terminal BASIC. The statements are listed in alphabetic order. Each statement is shown with statement syntax, a brief description, and statement examples. Most statements can be used in direct computation mode. Some cannot. Refer to the BASIC Reference manual for additional information on direct computation mode.

Items in uppercase type must be included whenever the statement is used. The letters "LET" in the LET statement are an exception.

An ellipsis ("...") indicates items that can repeat indefinitely.

Lists consist of one or more of the items specified. Items within lists are separated by commas unless otherwise specified.

All punctuation marks (quotes, commas, colons, and semicolons) must be included.

ASSIGN

```
ASSIGN filename TO # filenumber
or
ASSIGN * TO # filenumber
```

The ASSIGN statement allows you to equate a filename to a logical filenumber. The filename can be a string or string expression. The filenumber is used by BASIC statements to select the file to be used in a file operation. This means that your program is independant of the name used for a data file. The file number must be between 1 and 127.

You can reuse the program with a different filename simply by changing the filename used in the ASSIGN statement. The ASSIGN statement allows you to reassign files while the program is running so that several files can be acted on in succession.

```
200 ASSIGN "DATA1" TO #3
300 ASSIGN "LEFT TAPE" TO #1
400 ASSIGN * TO #2
500 ASSIGN "TE*10" TO #1
600 ASSIGN "H#6" TO #2
```

CALL

CALL <subprogram name> [(<parameters>)]

The CALL statement is used to transfer control to a subprogram. The parameters can be numeric or string variables or expressions, or they can be logical file numbers. When a CALL statement is executed, the values of the CALL parameters are equated to similar variables in the SUB statement. (A SUB statement must be the first statement in the CALLED program.) Note that the variables in both the CALL statement and the SUB statement must be of the same type and order. Refer to the SUB statement for additional information.

```

10 FOR I=1 TO 10
20 INPUT A$
30 CALL TEXT(I,A$)
40 NEXT I
.
.
.
100 SUB TEXT(J,B$)
110 PRINT "LINE#",J;TAB(10);B$
120 SUBEND

```

COMMAND

COMMAND commandstring [,variable]

The COMMAND statement allows you to execute terminal commands from your BASIC program. If a variable is specified, the execution status of the command is returned in the variable. If the return variable is not used and the command does not execute properly, your program will be terminated. If the variable is used and the command executes properly, the variable will be set to zero before execution of the next program statement. On failure of the command the variable will be set to one of several error codes depending on the nature of the error. Refer to the BASIC manual for a description of the error codes.

If a quote is required within the command string, use the apostrophe character ('') as required.

Examples:

```

10 COMMAND "RE L"    ! REWIND THE LEFT TAPE
20 COMMAND A$

```

DATA

DATA datalist

Provides data to be read by READ statements. DATA statements may be located anywhere in the program; all DATA statements in a program are considered part of a single continuous list of data for that program. Data items may be numeric or string constants.

```

10 DATA 10
20 DATA "CALIFORNIA"
30 DATA 405,"OREGON",999

```

DIM

DIM itemlist [arraysize and/or stringlength]

Specifies the maximum length of strings and the maximum array size of numeric or string variables. String lengths are enclosed in brackets; array dimensions in parentheses. Numeric arrays declared in DIM statements assume the default numeric type. (Refer to LONG, INTEGER, and SHORT for additional information.)

```

70 DIM A$(25)
90 DIM K(18)
130 DIM P$(11,11)(25)

```

END

END

Terminates execution of the program. The END statement can be placed anywhere in a program except following a SUBEND statement.

```
90 END
```

ERROR

ERROR errornumber [, message]

This statement causes an immediate branch to the error handling routine. The error code placed in ERRN is the integer value of the errornumber parameter. Errornumber can be any integer expression. The ERROR statement can be used to cause application error conditions to be acted on by the same routines that would normally handle programming errors. Make sure that the error numbers that you use are different from any of the BASIC or terminal system errors. If they are not different, you will not be able to tell an application error from a programming error. (See the ON ERROR statement for a list of error numbers.) If no message exists for the error, a special message will be printed to indicate that there is no standard error message.

The optional message can be any string expression. If the message parameter is used, the user defined message will be displayed, replacing any standard message.

```
100 ERROR N+40
```

FOR...NEXT

FOR variable = initial TO final [STEP size]

- .
- .
- .

NEXT variable

The FOR...NEXT statements allow repetition of a group of statements between FOR and NEXT. The number of repetitions is determined by the initial and final values of a loop variable, and by an optional STEP size. The loop variable cannot be an array element or of type LONG.

```
110 FOR I=1 TO 5
120 FOR J=1 TO -3 STEP -1
130 PRINT J
140 NEXT J
150 NEXT I
```

GETDCM ON/OFF

GETDCM ON

or

GETDCM OFF

The GETDCM statement enables and disables the operation of the GETDCM function. GETDCM ON enables the GETDCM function (described later in this manual) and disables interrupts from interrupt characters received from the host computer over the terminal's data communications port. Note that interrupts from the terminal's keyboard are not affected. (Refer to SET KEY and ON KEY for additional information on interrupt keys.) GETDCM OFF disables the GETDCM function and enables data communications interrupts.

```
10 GETDCM ON
```

GETKBD ON/OFF

GETKBD ON

or

GETKBD OFF

The GETKBD statement enables and disables the operation of the GETKBD function. GETKBD ON enables the GETKBD function and disables program interrupts from the keyboard. (Refer to SET KEY and ON KEY for additional information.) GETKBD OFF disables the GETKBD function and enables the keyboard interrupt keys. Note that GETKBD ON/OFF does not affect program interrupts received through the data communications port.

```
20 GETKBD ON
```

GOSUB

GOSUB line number

Transfers control to the specified statement. The line number must refer to the first statement of a subroutine within the current program unit. A RETURN statement is required in the subroutine to return control to the statement following the GOSUB statement.

The GOSUB statement differs from the CALL statement in that the GOSUB statement can not pass parameters to the subroutine.

```
80 GOSUB 1000
90 REM CONTINUE PROCESSING
.
.
1000 REM: START OF SUBROUTINE
1010 RETURN
```

GOTO

GOTO line number

Transfers control to the specified statement in the current program unit.

```
160 GOTO 200
```

IF...THEN...ELSE

IF expression THEN statement [ELSE statement]

Evaluates a conditional expression and specifies an action to be taken if the condition is true. A conditional expression is considered true if its value is non-zero, false if its value is zero. The action may be a transfer to a line number or one or more executable statements.

```
180 IF A<0 THEN 400
190 IF A=B THEN PRINT B
```

IMAGE

IMAGE formatstring

The IMAGE statement provides format specifications to be used in a PRINT USING statement. The PRINT USING statement must reference the line number of the IMAGE statement to be used. The IMAGE statement cannot be used in a multistatement line and cannot contain comments.

```
200 PRINT USING 300; A$,B,C$
300 IMAGE "MONTH",3A,DD.DD,4A
```

INPUT

INPUT ["message"],] variablelist

The INPUT statement requests input to one or more variables by displaying a "?" prompt. The program will then accept string or numeric data from the keyboard. (See also KEYCODE.) If an optional message is used, the message replaces the "?" prompt.

```
10 INPUT A$,B
20 input "ENTER TIME",T
```

INTEGER

INTEGER itemlist (arraysize)

Declares that the variables in the itemlist are type INTEGER. If arraysize is specified, the maximum size for the array is also set. Integers must be in the range -32768 to +32767.

```
20 INTEGER B(20)
```

KEYCDE

KEYCDE (X, keynumber, new keycode)

KEYCDE assigns the code values to be used for decoding the keyboard. Each of the keys on the keyboard is mapped to a code value (normally ASCII). The keys are numbered according to the diagram shown in figure 12-1. When a key is pressed, its location number is returned to the terminal. The number is used to select the proper ASCII code out of a table. For example, key number 109 would normally be the "A" key. Element U(109) would be equal to 65 (the ASCII decimal code for A).

The valid key numbers are 0–112. Keycodes can be between 0 and 255. The left and right shift keys, CNTL, AUTO LF, BLOCK MODE, CAPS LOCK, REMOTE, and RESET keys cannot be redefined.

There are three possible code tables from which the keycode can be obtained. The X parameter in the statement is used to indicate which one of the tables is being defined with the current array. X selects the keycode table as follows:

- X = 0 Unshift character codes
- 1 Left shift key characters
- 2 Right shift key characters
- 3 Left and right shift characters (defines both shift tables)

When the left shift key (#4 in figure 12-1) is pressed in addition to the character key, the left shift array will be used to select the character code. The right shift key (#5 in figure 12-1) will cause the character to be selected from the right shift table. Table 12-1 lists the default values for the keycode tables.

Table 12-1. Default Keyboard Codes

Key #	UNSHIFT		SHIFT		Key #	UNSHIFT		SHIFT	
	Code	Key	Code	Key		Code	Key	Code	Key
1	0		same	same	57	129		same	same
2	27		same	same	58	55	7	39	'
3	9		same	same	59	117	u	85	U
4	0		same	same	60	110	n	78	N
5	0		same	same	61	106	j	74	J
6	139		141		62	194		same	same
7	165		144		63	177		same	same
8	8		same	same	64	208		same	same
9	134		same	same	65	133		same	same
10	49	1	33	!	66	56	8	40	(
11	113	q	81	Q	67	105	i	73	I
12	122	z	90	Z	68	109	m	77	M
13	239		same	same	69	104	h	72	H
14	164		150		70	212		same	same
15	135		143		71	178		same	same
16	92		124	|	72	205		same	same
17	131		same	same	73	240		same	same
18	50	2	34	"	74	152		same	same
19	119	w	87	W	75	111	o	79	O
20	120	x	88	X	76	44	'	60	<
21	93	]	125	}	77	103	g	71	G
22	140		151		78	138		149	
23	163		145		79	136		142	
24	155		same	same	80	204		same	same
25	128		same	same	81	241		same	same
26	51	3	35	#	82	57	9	41)
27	101	e	69	E	83	112	p	80	P
28	99	c	67	C	84	46	.	62	>
29	58	:	42	*	85	102	f	70	F
30	196		same	same	86	166		146	
31	211		same	same	87	162		137	
32	156		same	same	88	247		same	same
33	132		same	same	89	242		same	same
34	52	4	36	\$	90	48	0	same	same
35	114	r	82	R	91	64	@	96	'
36	118	v	86	V	92	47	/	63	?
37	59	:	43	+	93	100	d	68	D
38	232		same	same	94	0	(not used)	148	
39	193		same	same	95	147		same	same
40	157		same	same	96	246		same	same
41	250		same	same	97	243		same	same
42	53	5	37	%	98	45	-	61	=
43	116	t	84	T	99	91	[	123	{
44	98	b	66	B	100	0	(not used)	101	
45	108	l	76	L	101	115	s	83	S
46	195		same	same	102	0	(not used)	103	
47	213		same	same	103	0	(not used)	104	
48	158		same	same	104	245		same	same
49	0	(not used)	38	&	105	153		same	same
50	54	6	89	Y	106	94		126	~
51	121	y	same	same	107	95	—	127	■
52	32	SPACE	same	same	108	0	(not used)	109	
53	107	k	75	K	109	97	a	65	A
54	214		same	same	110	0	(not used)	111	
55	202		same	same	111	0	(not used)	112	
56	130		same	same	112	244		same	same

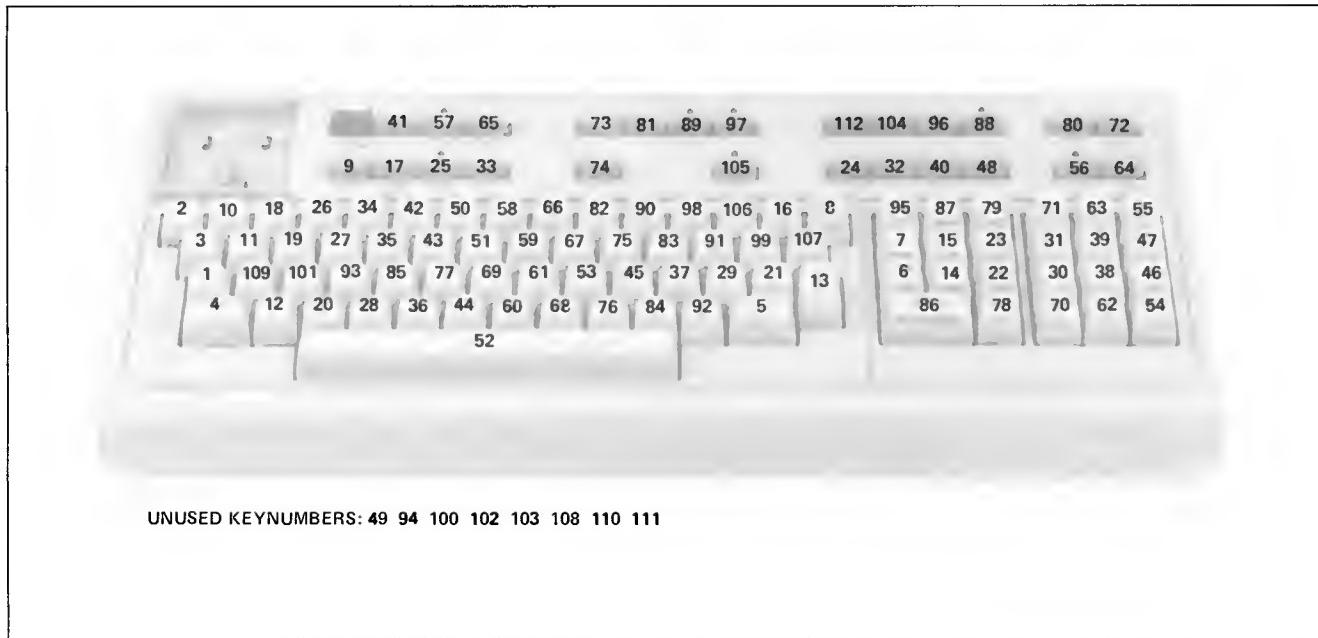


Figure 12-1. Terminal Keyboard Layout

LET

LET variablelist = expression

The let statement assigns a value to a variable. The keyword LET may be omitted. Multiple variables can be assigned a common value by using a comma to separate the variables.

```
10 LET X = 10
20 Y=20
30 X,Y = 30
```

LINPUT

LINPUT ["message"],] stringvariable

An entire line of input is accepted as a single string. The data can be assigned to a string or substring. Extra characters are truncated if the destination string is not large enough. If the optional message is used, the message will be printed on the display in place of the prompt.

```
30 LINPUT H$
90 LINPUT "Name:", N$
```

LINPUT

LINPUT # filenumber [BYTE count]; stringvariable

The LINPUT # statement is similar to LINPUT except that the line of input data is read from the file specified by the file number. File numbers are assigned using the ASSIGN statement.

If the optional byte count is used, only the number of bytes (characters) specified will be read into the string variable. If a byte count of 0 is given, the length of the string as determined from dimension or data type declarations will be used to determine the number of characters to be input.

```
10 LINPUT #3;B$
20 LINPUT #4 BYTE 30; A$
```

LONG

LONG itemlist (arraysize)

The LONG statement is used to declare the variables in the itemlist to be of type LONG.

```
600 LONG A,B(4,4)
```

NEXT(See FOR...NEXT)

OFF KEY #

OFF KEY # keycode

Disables any interrupt associated with the indicated key. The keycodes are shown in table 12-1 (see KEYCDE). Refer to ON KEY# for additional information.

```
10 OFF KEY # 32
```

ON END #

ON END # filenumber CALL subprogram

or

ON END # filenumber GOSUB linenumber

or

ON END # filenumber GOTO linenumber

The ON END statement causes a transfer of control to the specified statement or subprogram when an end of file condition is detected. Note that the transfer will occur for the specified file only. The ON END statement must be executed prior to the end of file condition in order to be effective. Subsequent ON END statements can change the destination subprogram or linenumbers. (Refer to the ON ERROR statement for additional information.)

The ON END # statement has effect only within the current program unit. It will not affect operation of a subsequently called subprogram. A new ON END # statement must be executed in each subprogram.

If an end of file condition is reached and an ON END statement has not been previously executed for the file, the program will be terminated with an error.

```
10 ON END # 1 CALL Help
20 ON END # 2 GOSUB 300
30 ON END # 3 GOTO 500
.
.
110 PRINT #1;X,Y
120 READ #2;A$
130 PRINT #3;A$,X,Y
.
.
700 SUB Help
710 PRINT "NEED BIGGER FILE";
720 SUBEND
```

ON ... GOSUB

ON expression GOSUB linelist

Causes the program to execute a subroutine at one of several line numbers. The expression is evaluated and rounded to an integer. This integer selects the first, second, or nth line number from the linelist. If the integer is less than 1 or greater than the number of lines in the linelist, the statement following the ON ... GOSUB statement is executed instead.

Upon return from the selected subroutine the program will continue execution with the statement following the ON...GOSUB statement.

```
10 ON N+M GOSUB 300,400,500,600,700
```

ON ... GOTO

ON expression GOTO linelist

Causes a branch to one of several statements. The expression is evaluated and rounded to an integer. The integer is then used to select a statement from the linelist in the same manner as the ON...GOSUB statement. If the integer is less than 1 or exceeds the number of line numbers in the linelist, the statement following the ON...GOTO statement will be executed.

```
400 ON N+2 GOTO 100,200,300
```

ON ERROR

ON ERROR GOTO linenumber

When an error is detected by the Interpreter, a branch to the indicated linenumber will occur. The type of error can then be examined and the appropriate action taken. The RESUME statement should always be used to continue program execution following the error handling routine.

Once an ON ERROR statement has been executed, all errors will cause a branch to the indicated error handling routine. If the linenumber given is not valid, a special error message will be generated.

```
10 ON ERROR GOTO 1000
```

If you specify a linenumber of 0, the ON ERROR branch is disabled and subsequent errors will cause the program to halt and an error message to be printed. If the ON ERROR GOTO 0 statement is contained in the error handling routine itself, it will cause the program to stop and print the error message. You should use ON ERROR GOTO 0 in error handling routines when there is no recovery procedure for a particular error.

If an error occurs within the error handling routine, the program will halt and an error message for the error occurring in the error handling routine will be printed. You cannot trap errors that occur within the error handling routine.

The ON ERROR GOTO statement must be executed before the error occurs. You can test for the type and location of the error using the error variables ERRL and ERRN. ERRL contains the line number in which the error occurred. If there is no error, ERRL will be 0. In Direct Computation mode ERRL will always be 65535. ERRN contains the code number of the error. If there is no error ERRN will be 0.

ERRL and ERRN cannot be used on the left side of the “=” sign in a LET or assignment statement.

A list of error types and messages is given at the back of this manual.

The following example shows how a simple error handling routine would work.

```
200 ON ERROR GOTO 400
210 INPUT "WHAT ARE THE VALUES TO DIVIDE?";X,Y
220 Z=X/Y
230 PRINT "THE QUOTIENT IS ";Z
240 GOTO 210
400 IF ERRN=1034 AND ERRL=220 THEN 420
410 ON ERROR GOTO 0
420 PRINT "DIVIDE BY ZERO ERROR"
430 RESUME 210
```

ON KEY

ON KEY # keycode CALL subprogram

or

ON KEY # keycode GOSUB linenumber

or

ON KEY # keycode GOTO linenumber

The ON KEY # statement provides a program interrupt when the indicated key is pressed. The default keycodes are listed in table 12-1(see KEYCDE). When the selected key is pressed, the program will perform the specified transfer as soon as the current statement has completed execution. The RETURN from the GOSUB will return the program to the statement following the point where the key interrupt occurred. Interrupt keys are not detected if they are entered as part of the response to an input or linput statement.

```
10 ON KEY # 27 CALL Gotcha
20 ON KEY # 32 GOSUB 400
30 ON KEY # 12 GOTO 100
```

PRINT

PRINT printlist

Prints the values of a list of expressions on the terminal screen. Items in the list may be separated by commas or semicolons. Commas space output in 15-character fields. Semicolons cause output to be printed without extra spaces. A comma or semicolon at the end of the print list suppresses the final carriage return and linefeed. The print list may also include print functions to control output format.

```
480 PRINT A,5,8/E;B$(4)&C$&"Q=9*",
490 PRINT "NAME",SPA(3);"ADDRESS"
```

PRINT

PRINT # filenumber [BYTE count]; printlist
or
PRINT # filenumber [BYTE count] USING format;
printlist

PRINT # writes values of expressions in the printlist serially to the specified file. A record is sent to the file each time a line feed character is encountered in the printlist (unless the BYTE option is used) and at the end of the printlist. If the printlist is ended with a comma or semicolon the data is sent to the specified file without carriage return and line feed characters at the end of the record.

The filenumber parameter is normally an integer between 1 and 127. If a filenumber of 0 is used the operation will be interpreted as an AGL operation. Refer to the AGL (A Graphics Language) description later in this manual for a description of PRINT #0.

Note that if you attempt to print 256 or more consecutive characters to a given file, a buffer overflow error will result.

If the optional byte count is used, BASIC will transfer the specified number of bytes to the file. This allows the transfer of 8-bit data and suppresses transmission of records upon encountering the line feed character. If a byte count of 0 is given, the actual byte count will be determined from the printlist items.

The PRINT # USING statement allows you to format data as it is written to the file. Refer to the PRINT USING statement.

```
10 PRINT #3; A$,R
30 PRINT #N; "HELLO"
40 PRINT #1 BYTE 24; A$,B$
50 PRINT #1 BYTE 80 USING 200; A,B,C$
```

PRINT USING

PRINT USING format ; printlist
or
PRINT USING image line ; printlist

The PRINT USING statement prints the values of the items in the printlist according to the specification given in the formatstring or in the referenced IMAGE statement. If the end of the format string is reached before all of the items in the printlist have been output, the format string is repeated.

The examples below show three ways of referencing format strings. The first (530) contains the format string in the PRINT USING statement itself. The second (540) uses a string variable to reference the format string. The third refers to an IMAGE statement containing the format string.

```
530 PRINT USING "3A,3A";A$,"ABC"
540 PRINT USING F$;N,M,C$
550 PRINT USING 200;A,B,D
```

Format Symbols

The format string used in PRINT USING and IMAGE statements is made up of the following format control characters:

Format Symbols

Symbol	Description	Example
Strings		
A	ASCII Character	AAA
K	Compressed format	K
Blanks		
X	Blank space	XXX
Separators		
,	Separator only	AA,DD
/	Separates specifications and begins a new line or a new record if writing to a file.	AA/DD
@	Separates specifications and, on lineprinter output, begins a new page.	AA@DD
Carriage Control	Characters (used at the end of the print list)	
+	Suppress linefeed	
-	Suppress carriage return	
#	Suppress both linefeed and carriage return	
Replicators		
n	Single replicator	3A
n()	Group replicator	3(3A,2X)
Numeric Specifications		
S	Sign character (+ or -)	SDD
M	Minus sign	MDD
D	Numeric digit, blank fill	DDD
.	Decimal point (.)	DDD.DD
R	European Decimal point (,)	DDDRDD
C	Comma	DDDCDD
P	Period (European comma)	DDPPPPP
K	Compressed format	"ONLY",XKX, "ITEMS"

READ

READ variablelist

The READ statement assigns numbers and strings from one or more DATA statements to the variables specified in the variable list.

```
570 READ X,A$,B$,Y
575 READ A(N,M),B(N,M)
```

READ

READ # filenumber; variablelist

The READ # statement assigns numbers and strings from the specified file to the variables in the variable list. Reads the file serially beginning at the current position of the file pointer. The file is read until the variable list is exhausted. The read may cross record boundaries. Data entries in the file must be separated by commas.

```
580 READ #5; A, B$
595 READ #1; A(N,M)
```

REMARK

REM comments

Allows you to place remarks within program listing. Any characters may be used. Note that the “!” character can be used following a statement in a line to indicate that the remaining characters on the line are comments. The “!” form of comment cannot be used in IMAGE or SUBEND statements.

```
640 REM ---ANY TEXT---
```

RESTORE

RESTORE [linenumber]

The RESTORE statement resets the data pointer to the specified DATA statement. If the linenumber is omitted, the pointer is reset to the lowest numbered DATA statement in the current program unit.

```
650 RESTORE 60
```

RESTORE

RESTORE # filenumber

Repositions the file pointer to the beginning of the specified file.

```
660 RESTORE #2
```

RESUME

RESUME [linenumber]

or

RESUME NEXT

Causes the program to continue execution after an error recovery routine (ON ERROR) has been executed. You can resume execution at one of the following points:

- the statement that caused the error (no linenumber)
- the statement following the error (NEXT)
- some specified line number

To continue execution at the statement causing the error use the following statement:

```
40 RESUME
```

To continue execution at the statement following the error use the following statement:

```
40 RESUME NEXT
```

To continue execution at a specified line number use the following statement:

```
40 RESUME 500
```

Note that the linenumber parameter must be a valid line number (>0). Refer to the ON ERROR statement for additional information.

RETURN

RETURN

Returns control from a subroutine to the statement immediately following the most recently executed GOSUB statement.

SHORT

SHORT itemlist (arraysize)

Declares the variables in the itemlist to be type SHORT. If arraysize is specified, the maximum size for the array is also set.

```
730 SHORT A,B(4,4)
```

SLEEP

SLEEP

The SLEEP statement allows you to place the Interpreter into a dormant state. Execution of the BASIC program is suspended and the terminal returns to normal operation. The BASIC Interpreter will continue to monitor the data comm and keyboard input however. The terminal will remain in the normal mode of operation until either the "break" key is entered (normally a CONTROL-A) or a key is pressed for which an ON KEY statement was executed in the suspended program. If the "break" key is used to return to the BASIC Interpreter, the suspended program will resume at the statement following the SLEEP statement.

If a keycode interrupt is used to return to BASIC, the suspended program will execute the statement(s) specified in the ON KEY statement. If the ON KEY ... GOSUB or the ON KEY ... CALL forms were used, the indicated subroutine or subprogram is executed and then the program will return to the SLEEP state. If the ON KEY ... GOTO form of statement was used, the program will not return to the SLEEP state unless a SLEEP statement is again executed.

The WAKEUP statement can also be used in an ON KEY subroutine or subprogram to cancel the current SLEEP statement.

Examples:

```

20 ON KEY # 160 GOSUB 200
30 ON KEY # 170 CALL Sbproga
40 ON KEY # 180 GOTO 300
50 SLEEP
.
.
200 PRINT "TEST1"
210 RETURN
300 STOP
.
.
400 SUB Sbproga
410 PRINT "TEST2"
420 WAKEUP
430 SUBEND

```

STOP

STOP

The STOP statement terminates program execution. The program can be resumed with the GO command.

```
740 STOP
```

SUB

SUB subprogramname [(parameters)]

The SUB statement must be the first statement in a subprogram. It provides the name of the subprogram and marks the entry point for the main or calling program. The SUB statement also lists any parameters that are to be passed between the calling program and the subprogram. The last statement in the subprogram must be a SUBEND statement.

```
300 READ #1 ;A$  
400 C=NUM(A$(1,1))  
410 IF C>48 AND C<57 THEN 440  
420 CALL Alpha (C)  
430 GOTO 300  
440 CALL Numeric (C)  
. . .  
500 SUB Alpha (N)  
502 PRINT CHR$(N);  
504 SUBEND  
600 SUB Numeric (N)  
602 K=K*10+N  
604 SUBEND
```

SUBEND

SUBEND

The SUBEND statement is used to indicate the end of a subprogram. Refer to the SUB statement for additional information.

The SUBEND statement must be the only statement on the line. It cannot be used in multistatement lines or with the "!" form of comments or with the REMARK statement. The only statement that can follow the SUBEND statement is a SUB statement beginning another subprogram. If any other statement type is used, the message MISSING SUB will be displayed and the program will be halted.

```
10 SUB Test (N,K,A$)  
. . .  
50 SUBEND
```

WAKEUP

WAKEUP

The WAKEUP statement cancels the effect of the last executed SLEEP statement.

Example:

```
400 WAKEUP
```

BUILT-IN FUNCTIONS

The following paragraphs describe the built-in functions available in BASIC. The functions are divided into the following categories:

- Numeric
- Print
- Trigonometric
- Input/Output
- String
- Other

Within each category, the functions are listed in alphabetic order. The letter which appears after most function names specifies the type of result that is returned by the function. These letters are interpreted as follows:

S – short
I – integer
L – long
ST – string
T – same type as X

Numeric Functions

Function Type Description

ABS(X) T Absolute value of X.

```
10 A = ABS(2)! A = 2  
20 B = ABS(-2)! B = 2
```

CSENA(R,C) I Returns the absolute row and column position of the cursor in R and C. C is 1 to 80 and R is 1 to 528. The function value is set to the number of the current user window (1-4).

```
10 A = CSENA(P,Q)
```

CSENS(R,C) I Returns the screen relative row and column position of the cursor in R and C. C is 1 to 80 and R is 1 to 24. The function value is set to the number of the current user window (1-4).

```
10 B = CSENS(A(1),B(1))
```

EXP(X) S The natural log e raised to the X power (E^X).

```
70 G=EXP(2)! G = E^2 = 7.39
```

INT(X) I Largest integer \leq X.

```
80 H=INT(6.999)! H=6
```

LOG(X) S Natural logarithm ; X>0

```
100 J=LOG(2)
```

LONG(X) L Returns the LONG value of X.

```
120 R=LONG(Y)
```

RND S The next pseudo-random number in a standard sequence of numbers ≥ 0 and <1 .

```
130 M=RND
```

SGN(X) I The sign of X; -1 if X<0, 0 if X=0, and +1 if X>0.

```
140 N=SGN(J)
```

SHORT(X) S X rounded to SHORT representation.

```
145 M=SHORT(N)
```

SQR(X) S The positive square root of X.

```
160 Q = SQR(169)
```

Trigonometric Functions

ATN(X) S Returns the arctangent of X in radians.

```
200 E = ATN(Y)
```

COS(X) S Returns the cosine of X where X is in radians.

```
300 X = R*COS(A)
```

SIN(X) S Returns the sine of X where X is in radians.

```
400 Y = R*SIN(A)
```

TAN(X) S Returns the tangent of X where X is in radians.

```
500 T = TAN(A)
```

String Functions

CHR\$(X) ST Returns a string character with the value of the numeric expression X. The value of X must be between 0 and 255.

```
10 LET T$=CHR$(32) ! T$ = " " (blank)
```

LEN(S\$) I Returns the number of ASCII characters in the string S\$.

```
10 DIM A$(20)
20 LET A$ = "1234"
30 LET B = LEN(A$)! B = 4
```

NUM(S\$) I Returns a numeric value between 0 and 255 corresponding to the first character of the string S\$. S\$ cannot be the null string "".

```
10 LET T$ = "Payroll"
20 LET B = NUM(T$[2;1])! B = 97
```

POS(S\$,S2\$) I Searches the string S1\$ for the first occurrence of the string S2\$. Returns the starting index if found, otherwise returns 0.

```
10 LET T$="Television"
20 LET V$ = "vision"
30 LET C = POS(T$,V$)! C = 5
```

VAL(S\$) * Returns the numeric equivalent of the string S\$. * – The data type returned may be integer, short, or long as required.

```
200 N = VAL(N$)+I
```

VAL\$(X) ST Returns the value of the numeric expression X expressed as a string of ASCII digits.

```
10 LET T$ = VAL$(128+34) ! T$ = "162"
```

RPT\$(S\$,X) ST Repeats the string in S\$ X times.

```
10 LET T$ = "Ring!"
20 LET E$ = RPT$(T$,3)
E$ = "Ring!Ring!Ring"
```

BASIC Syntax

TRIM\$(S\$) ST Returns a string which is equal to S\$ with all leading and trailing blanks stripped off.

```
10 LET T$ = " Pay roll  "
20 LET F$ = TRIM$(T$)
F$ = "Pay roll"
```

UPC\$(S\$) ST Returns a string made up of the uppercase equivalents of each of the characters in S\$.

PROC\$(X) ST Returns the string representation of the key with a code value of X. If the key is a function key, the appropriate escape sequence is returned. PROC\$ cannot process all of the terminal keycodes.

Print Functions

The following functions can only be used in a PRINT statement. If they are used in a PRINT USING statement they will cause your program to end with an error. The MOVC functions do not return a function value and will cause an error if used in PRINT # statements. The LIN, SPA, and TAB functions will affect the selected file when used in the PRINT # statement.

LIN(N) Skips N lines in the alphanumeric display (current window).

SPA(N) Prints N blanks in the alphanumeric display (current window).

TAB(N) Prints blanks up to column N in the alphanumeric display (current window).

MOVCS(R,C) Moves the cursor to row R, column C. R and C are screen relative coordinates (1,1 to 24,80).

MOVCA(R,C) Moves the cursor to row R, column C. R and C are absolute display memory addresses (1,1 to 255,80).

MOVCR(R,C) Moves the cursor to the current row plus R and the current column plus C. R and C can be positive or negative.

Input/Output Functions

GETKBD(X) I Returns in X the keycode associated with the next key struck. The function value is 1 if a keycode is returned and 0 if no keycode was found. This function can only be executed if the GETKBD flag is set (see GETKBD ON).

DSPIN\$(L,X) ST Returns a string from the display, starting at the current cursor position. The absolute value of L is the length of the returned string. If format mode is on, the text returned will be limited to the current unprotected field. If L is negative, character values in the range 128–255 are ignored. If L is positive, characters in the 128–255 range are expanded to their representative escape sequences. In the terminal, characters with values greater than 127 are used to indicate display enhancements, field types, etc. Additional information on these character values is given in the BASIC for Terminals reference manual.

X must be a numeric variable and will be set to 0 if the end of a terminal data field, the end of the current line, or the end of the display is not encountered before the specified number of characters is read. If the end of a data field or the end of the current line is encountered, X will be set to -1. If the end of the display is reached, X will be set to 1.

GETDCM(S\$) I Returns one character from the datacomm without wait. The character is stored in S\$. The value of the function is 1 if a character was returned and 0 if there was no character. This function can only be executed if the GETDCM flag is set (see GETDCM ON).

PUTDCM(S\$) I Sends the first character in S\$ to the datacomm. The function value is 1 if the transfer was successful, 0 if the transfer was unsuccessful, and -1 if the datacomm was busy.

Other

ERRL I Returns the line number in which the last error occurred. See ON ERROR.

ERRN I Returns the error code of the last error. See ON ERROR.

FRE(expression) I Returns the amount of available memory space. If the expression is numeric, the returned value is the amount of remaining program and variable storage. If the expression is a string, the returned value is the amount of remaining string storage space.

ASCII CHARACTER SET

Table A-1. ASCII Character Set

DECIMAL VALUE	GRAPHIC	COMMENTS	ALTERNATE CHARACTER	DECIMAL VALUE	GRAPHIC	COMMENTS
0	¶	Null	(a ^c	64	(a	Commercial at
1	¤	Start of heading	A ^c	65	A	Uppercase A
2	¤	Start of text	B ^c	66	B	Uppercase B
3	¤	End of text	C ^c	67	C	Uppercase C
4	¤	End of transmission	D ^c	68	D	Uppercase D
5	¤	Enquiry	E ^c	69	E	Uppercase E
6	¤	Acknowledge	F ^c	70	F	Uppercase F
7	¤	Bell	G ^c	71	G	Uppercase G
8	¤	Backspace	H ^c	72	H	Uppercase H
9	¤	Horizontal tabulation	I ^c	73	I	Uppercase I
10	¤	Line feed	J ^c	74	J	Uppercase J
11	¤	Vertical tabulation	K ^c	75	K	Uppercase K
12	¤	Form feed	L ^c	76	L	Uppercase L
13	¤	Carriage return	M ^c	77	M	Uppercase M
14	¤	Shift out	N ^c	78	N	Uppercase N
15	¤	Shift in	O ^c	79	O	Uppercase O
16	¤	Data link escape	P ^c	80	P	Uppercase P
17	¤	Device control 1 (X-ON)	Q ^c	81	Q	Uppercase Q
18	¤	Device control 2	R ^c	82	R	Uppercase R
19	¤	Device control 3 (X-OFF)	S ^c	83	S	Uppercase S
20	¤	Device control 4	T ^c	84	T	Uppercase T
21	¤	Negative acknowledge	U ^c	85	U	Uppercase U
22	¤	Synchronous idle	V ^c	86	V	Uppercase V
23	¤	End of transmission block	W ^c	87	W	Uppercase W
24	¤	Cancel	X ^c	88	X	Uppercase X
25	¤	End of medium	Y ^c	89	Y	Uppercase Y
26	¤	Substitute	Z ^c	90	Z	Uppercase Z
27	¤	Escape	{ ^c	91	{	Opening bracket
28	¤	File separator	\ ^c	92	\	Reverse slant
29	¤	Group separator	|^c	93	}	Closing bracket
30	¤	Record separator	^ ^c	94	^	Circumflex
31	¤	Unit separator	— ^c	95	—	Underscore
32		Space (Blank)		96	`	Grave accent
33	!	Exclamation point		97	a	Lowercase a
34	"	Quotation mark		98	b	Lowercase b
35	#	Number sign		99	c	Lowercase c
36	\$	Dollar sign		100	d	Lowercase d
37	%	Percent sign		101	e	Lowercase e
38	&	Ampersand		102	f	Lowercase f
39	'	Apostrophe		103	g	Lowercase g
40	(	Opening parenthesis		104	h	Lowercase h
41	)	Closing parenthesis		105	i	Lowercase i
42	*	Asterisk		106	j	Lowercase j
43	+	Plus		107	k	Lowercase k
44	,	Comma		108	l	Lowercase l
45	-	Hyphen (Minus)		109	m	Lowercase m
46	.	Period (Decimal)		110	n	Lowercase n
47	/	Slant		111	o	Lowercase o
48	0	Zero		112	p	Lowercase p
49	1	One		113	q	Lowercase q
50	2	Two		114	r	Lowercase r
51	3	Three		115	s	Lowercase s
52	4	Four		116	t	Lowercase t
53	5	Five		117	u	Lowercase u
54	6	Six		118	v	Lowercase v
55	7	Seven		119	w	Lowercase w
56	8	Eight		120	x	Lowercase x
57	9	Nine		121	y	Lowercase y
58	:	Colon		122	z	Lowercase z
59	;	Semicolon		123	{	Opening (left) brace
60	<	Less than		124	|	Vertical line
61	=	Equals		125	}	Closing (right) brace
62	>	Greater than		126	~	Tilde
63	?	Question mark		127	█	Delete

Table A-2. ASCII (7-Bit) Character Codes

GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX	GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX
NUL	0	0	0	@	64	100	40
SOH	1	1	1	A	65	101	41
STX	2	2	2	B	66	102	42
ETX	3	3	3	C	67	103	43
EOT	4	4	4	D	68	104	44
ENQ	5	5	5	E	69	105	45
ACK	6	6	6	F	70	106	46
BEL	7	7	7	G	71	107	47
BS	8	10	8	H	72	110	48
HT	9	11	9	I	73	111	49
LF	10	12	A	J	74	112	4A
VT	11	13	B	K	75	113	4B
FF	12	14	C	L	76	114	4C
CR	13	15	D	M	77	115	4D
SO	14	16	E	N	78	116	4E
SI	15	17	F	O	79	117	4F
DLE	16	20	10	P	80	120	50
DC1	17	21	11	Q	81	121	51
DC2	18	22	12	R	82	122	52
DC3	19	23	13	S	83	123	53
DC4	20	24	14	T	84	124	54
NAK	21	25	15	U	85	125	55
SYN	22	26	16	V	86	126	56
ETB	23	27	17	W	87	127	57
CAN	24	30	18	X	88	130	58
EM	25	31	19	Y	89	131	59
SUB	26	32	1A	Z	90	132	5A
ESC	27	33	1B	[	91	133	5B
FS	28	34	1C	\	92	134	5C
GS	29	35	1D	^	93	135	5D
RS	30	36	1E	-	94	136	5E
US	31	37	1F	`	95	137	5F
SP	32	40	20	a	96	140	60
!	33	41	21	b	97	141	61
"	34	42	22	c	98	142	62
#	35	43	23	d	99	143	63
\$	36	44	24	e	100	144	64
%	37	45	25	f	101	145	65
&	38	46	26	g	102	146	66
,	39	47	27	h	103	147	67
(	40	50	28	i	104	150	68
)	41	51	29	j	105	151	69
*	42	52	2A	k	106	152	6A
+	43	53	2B	l	107	153	6B
,	44	54	2C	m	108	154	6C
-	45	55	2D	n	109	155	6D
.	46	56	2E	o	110	156	6E
/	47	57	2F	p	111	157	6F
0	48	60	30	q	112	160	70
1	49	61	31	r	113	161	71
2	50	62	32	s	114	162	72
3	51	63	33	t	115	163	73
4	52	64	34	u	116	164	74
5	53	65	35	v	117	165	75
6	54	66	36	w	118	166	76
7	55	67	37	x	119	167	77
8	56	70	38	y	120	170	78
9	57	71	39	z	121	171	79
:	58	72	3A	{	122	172	7A
;	59	73	3B	}	123	173	7B
<	60	74	3C	:	124	174	7C
=	61	75	3D	}	125	175	7D
>	62	76	3E	~	126	176	7E
?	63	77	3F	■	127	177	7F

Compatibility

This appendix lists some of the differences between the BASIC language interpreter used in the terminal and the ANSI standard for minimal BASIC as well as other BASIC interpreters offered by Hewlett-Packard.

- FOR...NEXT loops
- Arithmetic operator hierarchy
- Reserved words
- Default data type
- User defined functions
- RANDOMIZE
- OPTION BASE

FOR...NEXT Loops

Terminal BASIC tests the loop variable after the loop has been executed. This means that all FOR...NEXT loops will be executed at least once, even if the loop variable is initially larger than the loop limit value. The ANSI standard specifies that the loop variable will be tested before the loop is executed.

Arithmetic Operator Hierarchy

The ANSI standard does not specify an operator hierarchy. Some BASIC interpreters do define the order in which operators are executed. The hierarchy used by Terminal BASIC is given in Section 3.

Reserved Words

Terminal BASIC has several "reserved words". These are letter combinations that cannot be used for variable or subprogram names. A list of reserved words is given in Appendix C.

Default Data Type

ANSI standard BASIC does not specify different data types. Terminal BASIC uses SHORT as the default data type. If you do not specify the data type of a numeric variable, it will be treated as SHORT. Other BASIC interpreters may use type LONG as the default data type. Data types are discussed in Section 2.

User Defined Functions

Terminal BASIC does not allow user defined functions. These are functions which are defined using a DEF statement to create extensions to BASIC.

RANDOMIZE

Terminal BASIC does not have a RANDOMIZE statement. The RANDOMIZE statement is used to select a new "seed" or starting point for a series of random numbers. Refer to Section 3 for a description of the random number function (RND).

OPTION BASE

Terminal BASIC does not have an OPTION BASE statement. This statement is used to set the starting point for array indexes to "0" or "1". Terminal BASIC uses "0" as the first element in an array.

Reserved Words

When the BASIC interpreter is analyzing a newly entered line of program text, it first attempts to determine whether it can recognize keywords. Since a variable name may contain any number of characters (with only the first 15 being significant), variable names cannot contain a keyword in the leading characters of the name. The BASIC interpreter assists you in determining whether a keyword has accidentally crept into the leading characters of a variable name. All text is formatted by the BASIC interpreter such that:

- keywords (also called reserved words) are converted to all uppercase letters.
- variable names are converted to an uppercase letter for the initial letter and all successive letters are forced to lowercase.

Upon listing a program, all unquoted text appears with this format. If an intended variable name appears with more than one uppercase letter at its head, then it contains a keyword in its leading characters. A variable name may contain any keyword within its characters as long as the leading characters do not form a keyword.

Table C-1. List of Reserved Words

ABORTIO	INT	RESUME
ABS	INTEGER	RETURN
AND	KEY	RND
ASSIGN	KEYCDE	RPT\$
AUTO	LEN	RUN
BASIC	LET	SAVE
BYTE	LIN	SCR
CALL	LINPUT	SCRATCH
CHR\$	LIST	SECURE
CMP	LOCAL	SENBUS
COMMAND	LOCKOUT	SET
CSAVE	LONG	SGN
CSENA	MERGE	SHORT
CSENS	MOD	SINGLE
DATA	MOVCA	SIZE
DELETE	MOVCR	SLEEP
DIM	MOVCS	SLOAD
DIV	MULTIPLE	SPA
DSPIN\$	NEXT	SQR
ELSE	NOT	STATUS
END	NUM	STD
ENTER	OFF	STEP
ERRL	ON	STOP
ERRN	OR	SUB
ERROR	OUTPUT	SUBEND
EXIT	PASS CONTROL	TAB
EXTEND	POS	THEN
FOR	PPOLL	TIMEOUT
FRE	PRINT	TO
GET	PROC\$	TRIGGER
GETDCM	PROMPT	TRIM\$
GETKBD	PUTDCM	UPC\$
GO	READ	USER
GO TO	REM	USING
GOSUB	REMOTE	VAL
GOTO	REMOVE	VAL\$
IF	RENUM	WAKEUP
IMAGE	RESET	XOR
INPUT	RESTORE	

Additional keywords in some versions of BASIC:

ATN	GPMM	PEN
AXES	GRID	PENDN
CLIP	GSTAT	PENUP
CLIPOFF	IPILOT	PLOT
CLIPON	LAXES	PLOTR
COS	LDIR	POINT
CSIZE	LGRID	RPLOT
CURSOR	LIMIT	SCALE
DIGITIZE	LINE	SETAR
DRAW	LOCATE	SETGU
DSIZE	LOG	SETUU
DSTAT	LXAXIS	SHOW
EXP	LYAXIS	SIN
FRAME	MARGIN	TAN
FXD	MOVE	WHERE
GCLR	MSCALE	XAXIS
GPDN	PDIR	YAXIS

Summary of BASIC

COMMANDS

AUTO	Generates statement numbers automatically as program statements are entered.
REMOVE	Removes commands or statements added by the EXTEND command.
GO	Resumes program execution after a break character or STOP statement.
CSAVE	Saves a condensed version of your program on cartridge tape.
DELETE	Deletes statements from your program.
EXIT	Exits the BASIC Interpreter.
EXTEND	Allows you to add functions, commands, and statements to the BASIC Interpreter.
GET	Loads your program from a cartridge tape.
LIST	Lists your program.
MERGE	Merges a program on a cartridge tape with one in the terminal.
RENUM	Renumbers statements in your program.
RUN	Starts execution of your program.
SAVE	Stores your program on a cartridge tape.
SCRATCH	Deletes the current program from the terminal.
SET	Sets default modes of operation (MULTIPLE, SINGLE, SHORT, LONG, INTEGER, SIZE, PROMPT, and break character).

STATEMENTS

ASSIGN	Equates a file name with a logical file number.
CALL	Transfers control to a named subprogram.
COMMAND	Allows you to execute any terminal command.
DATA	Holds data accessed by READ statements.
DIM	Sets the size of strings and arrays.
END	Terminate the program.
ERROR	Causes a branch to the error handling routine.
FOR . . . NEXT	Allows you to execute program steps a specified number of times.
GETDCM ON/OFF	Enables and disables the GETDCM function.
GETKBD ON/OFF	Enables and disables the GETKBD function.
GOSUB . . . RETURN	Allows you to transfer control to a subroutine and then back to the main program.
GOTO	Causes a branch to the indicated statement.

IF . . . THEN . . . ELSE	Allows conditional processing, or branching.
IMAGE	Provides format information for PRINT USING statements.
INPUT	Inputs data values to your program from the keyboard.
INTEGER	Declares variables to be of type INTEGER.
KEYCDE	Assigns code values to keys on the terminal keyboard.
LET	Provides an equate or assignment function.
LINPUT	Allows input of a full record from the keyboard.
LINPUT#	Inputs a record from a file.
LONG	Declares variables to be of type LONG.
OFF KEY#	Disables interrupts on the indicated key.
ON END#	Causes a branch when the end of a file is reached.
ON . . . GOSUB	Branch to one of several subroutines.
ON . . . GOTO	Branch to one of several statements.
ON ERROR	Branch on error conditions.
ON KEY#	Branch when the indicated key is struck.
PRINT	Print values to the display.
PRINT#	Print data to the specified file.
PRINT USING	Print data to the display using a format.
PRINT # USING	Print data to a file using a format.
READ	Input data stored in a program statement.
READ #	Input data stored on a file.
REMARK	Places comments in the program.
RESTORE	Reset the data pointer to the first item in a DATA statement.
RESTCRE #	Reset the file pointer to the beginning of a file.
RESUME	Causes program to continue following an error recovery procedure.
SHORT	Declares variables to be of type SHORT.
SLEEP	Causes the BASIC program to be suspended.
STOP	Causes the program to stop.
SUB	Defines the beginning of a subprogram.
SUBEND	Defines the end of a subprogram.
WAKEUP	Reverses the effect of a SLEEP statement.

FUNCTIONS

ABS(X)	Returns the absolute value of X.
CSENA(R,C)	Returns the absolute alphanumeric cursor position in R and C.
CSENS(R,C)	Returns the screen relative alphanumeric cursor position in R and C.
DSPIN\$(L,X)	Returns a string from the display, starting at the current cursor position and having length L. X will be set to 0 if the end of display memory is not found during input.
FRE(X) or FRE(X\$)	Returns the amount of free memory space available.
GETDCM(\$\$)	Returns a single character from the datacomm in \$\$.
GETKBD(X)	Returns the code of a single character from the keyboard in X.
INT(X)	Returns the integer value of X.
LEN(\$\$)	Returns the length of \$\$.
LIN(X)	Prints X blank lines.
LOG(X)	Returns the natural log of X.
LONG(X)	Converts the value of X to type LONG.
MOVCA(R,C)	Positions the cursor at the absolute coordinates row and column.
MOVCR(R,C)	Positions the cursor at the relative coordinates row and column.
MOVCS(R,C)	Positions the cursor at the screen relative coordinates row and column.
NUM(\$\$)	Returns the ASCII code value of the first character in \$\$.
POS(S1\$,S2\$)	Returns the first character position of S2\$ in S1\$.
PROC\$(X)	Returns the character(s) whose ASCII (or terminal) code is X.
PUTDCM(\$\$)	Sends the first character in \$\$ to the datacomm.
RND	Returns a random number between 0 and 1.
RPT\$(\$\$,X)	Repeats the string \$\$, X times.
SGN(X)	Returns the sign of the value of X.
SHORT(X)	Changes the value of X to type SHORT.
SIN(X)	Returns the SINE of X.
SPA(X)	Causes X blank characters to be printed.
SQR(X)	Returns the square root of X.
TAB(X)	Causes blank characters to be printed up to column X.
TAN(X)	Return the tangent of X.
TRIM\$(\$\$)	Returns a string equivalent to \$\$ with the leading and trailing blanks removed.
UPC\$(\$\$)	Returns a string equivalent to \$\$ with each of the characters shifted to upper case.
VAL(\$\$)	Returns a numeric equivalent of the numerals in \$\$.
VAL\$(X)	Returns the numeral equivalent of the value in X.

HP-IB FUNCTIONS

CONTROL

ABORTIO	Halt current operation.
LOCAL	Selects device "local" state.
LOCAL LOCKOUT	Disables device panel controls.
PASS CONTROL	Selects active bus controller.
REMOTE	Returns device to bus control.
RESET	Resets bus device.
TIMEOUT	Sets device timeout.
TRIGGER	Starts multiple devices.

INPUT/OUTPUT

ENTER	Input data from device.
OUTPUT	Output data to device.
OUTPUT USING	Output formatted data to device.
SENDBUS	Sends direct device commands.
STATUS	

STATUS

PPOLL	Polls device status.
STATUS	Returns status of specific device.

AGL FUNCTIONS

SETUP

PLOTR	Select and initialize.
GPON	Power On Reset Plotter.
SETAR	Set Aspect Ratio.
LIMIT	Set Hard Clip Limit.
GCLR	Clear Display.
LOCATE	Define Plotting Area.
MARGIN	Define Plotting Area.
SCALE	Define User Units.
SHOW	Define User Units.
MSCALE	Set Up Metric Scaling.
CLIP	Move Soft Clip Limit.
CLIPOFF	Suspend Soft Clip.
CLIPON	Restore Soft Clip.
SETGU/SETUU	Select GDU's User Units.

PLOTTING

PENUP/PENDN	Lift Drop "Pen".
PEN	Select a "Pen".
LINE	Select Dash Pattern.
PLOT	Absolute Plotting.
MOVE	Absolute Move.
DRAW	Absolute Draw.
RPLOT	Relative Plotting.
IPLOT	Incremental Plot.
PDIR	Plot Direction — RPLOT/IPLOT.
PORG	Set Relocatable Origin.

AXIS LABELING

XAXIS	Draw Linear X Axis.
YAXIS	Draw Linear Y Axis.
LXAXIS	Draw Labeled X Axis.
LYAXIS	Draw Labeled Y Axis
AXES	Draw Linear Axes.
LAXES	Draw and Label Axes.
GRID	Draw Linear Grid.
LGRID	Draw and Label Grid.
FRAME	Outline Soft Clip Area.
FXD	Set Label Format.
LORG	Set Label Origin Mode.
LDIR	Set Label Direction.
CSIZE	Set Character Size.

INTERACTIVE

WHERE	Read Pen Position.
POINT	Set Cursor Position.
CURSOR	Read Cursor Position.
DIGITIZE	Read Cursor with Wait.
DSIZE	Return Size to Data.
DSTAT	Display Status.
GSTAT	Graphics Package Status.
TSTAT	Terminal Status.

Error Messages

A BASIC program executing in the terminal may generate BASIC, AGL, or command execution errors. These errors will normally cause your program to halt and display an error message. If you use the ON ERROR statement, you can create your own error handling routine.

All errors have a decimal code. Table E-1 contains a list of the error codes. The error code number, error message, and a description is given for each error. Refer to Section 10 for a description of error handling.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
00257	COMMAND INVALID DEVICE SPECIFIED	Incorrectly spelling a device name; correct spelling.
00258	INVALID FILE-ID	File-id passed to F/S intrinsics is incorrect; program error.
00259	INVALID FILE ACCESS	Reading a write only file or writing to read only file.
00260	ACTIVE FILE TABLE FULL	No more files can be opened until another file is closed first.
00261	DUPLICATE DEVICES SPECIFIED	More than one of the same device name in multiple device string specification; delete one.
00262	"SOURCE" = "DESTINATION"	Trying to read and write to the same device; change one of them.
00263	TOO MANY DEVICES SPECIFIED	Can't have more than one source device; can't have more than one destination device for a compare operation.
00264	CONFLICTING I/O	A write to display from I/O buffer is occurring during a GET operation.
00265	DIFF. LENGTH RECORDS	Record lengths on source and destination devices are different on a compare operation.
00266	DIFF. IN BYTE x RECORD y FILE z	A mismatch on a byte on a compare operation.
00267	DIFFERENCE IN RECORD TYPE	Record types did not agree from source and destination devices.
00268	ILLEGAL PARAMETER IN COMMAND	Unrecognized keyword in command parameter list.
00269	EXTRANEOUS PARAMETER IN	Too many keywords in command parameter list.
00270	MISSING PARAMETER IN COMMAND	Expected keyword in command parameter list not found.
00271	NON-NUMERIC PARAMETER IN	Illegal numeric digit found in command parameter list.
00272	EXCESSIVE NUMERIC PARAMETER IN COMMAND	Numeric digit too large in command parameter list.
00273	ASSIGN TABLE FULL	Can't fit new assignment into assign table; delete another entry to make room.
00274	NAME NOT IN ASSIGN TABLE	Name requested wasn't found in assign table.
00275	RE-ASSIGNMENT NOT ALLOWED	Devices cannot be reassigned in Edit Mode or Data Logging Mode. To reassign devices, disable Edit or Data Logging Mode, reassign, then enable the mode.
00276	ILLEGAL ASSIGN NAME	Incorrect character used in assign name. Names are truncated to 11 characters.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
00277	COMMAND PROGRAM NOT FOUND	Unable to find program with name specified in command channel.
00278	UNRECOGNIZED COMMAND	Unable to find command to match command specified in command channel.
00279	APPLICATION NOT FOUND	Unable to find a running application program.
00280	EXECUTE FILE NOT FOUND	Unable to find an active execute file.
00281	VOLUME TABLE FULL	Too many devices currently active. De-activate one of the devices.
00288	CARTRIDGE TAPE RUNOFF - ON LEFT DRIVE	Tape ran off; remove tape and rethread it.
00289	ABORTED ON LEFT DRIVE	Tape operation aborted; remove tape.
00290	END OF TAPE ON LEFT DRIVE	No more room on tape.
00291	END OF DATA ON LEFT DRIVE	End of valid data found on tape.
00292	PROTECTED ON LEFT DRIVE	Tape write protected; replace write enable tab.
00293	NO TAPE ON LEFT DRIVE	Tape not inserted.
00294	STALL ON LEFT DRIVE	Tape stalled; remove tape.
00295	READ FAIL ON LEFT DRIVE	Unable to read record from tape after nine retries.
00296	WRITE FAIL ON LEFT DRIVE	Unable to write to tape while in verify mode.
00297	FAIL ON LEFT DRIVE	Tape failed during a CTU test.
00298	END OF FILE ON LEFT DRIVE	End of file reached on tape during file compare operation.
00299	FILE MISSING ON LEFT DRIVE	Missing file mark found during a SKIP or FIND file command.
00304	RUNOFF - ON RIGHT TAPE	Tape ran off; remove tape and rethread it.
00305	ABORTED ON RIGHT DRIVE	Tape operation aborted; remove tape.
00306	END OF TAPE ON RIGHT DRIVE	No more room on tape.
00307	END OF DATA ON RIGHT DRIVE	End of valid data found on tape.
00308	PROTECTED ON RIGHT DRIVE	Tape write protected; replace write enable tab.
00309	NO TAPE ON RIGHT DRIVE	Tape not inserted.
00310	STALL ON RIGHT DRIVE	Tape stalled; remove tape.
00311	READ FAIL ON RIGHT DRIVE	Unable to read record from tape after nine retries.
00312	WRITE FAIL ON RIGHT DRIVE	Unable to write to tape while in verify mode.
00313	FAIL ON RIGHT DRIVE	Tape failed during a CTU test.
00314	END OF FILE ON RIGHT DRIVE	End of file reached on tape during file compare operation.
00315	FILE MISSING ON RIGHT DRIVE	Missing file mark found during SKIP or FIND file command.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
00336	PRINTER PRINT FAIL	General external printer fail; unspecific.
00337	NO PAPER ON EXTERNAL PRINTER	Paper out; resupply paper.
00338	NO EXTERNAL PRINTER	No printer connected, or no PCA board.
00368	NO SHARED PRINTER	No shared printer connected to HP-IB.
00369	PRINTER IS BUSY, RETRY	Shared printer is currently being used; wait until free.
00370	NO READ FROM PRINTER	Can't read from shared printer.
00371	NO PP	Printer did not respond in time.
00352	DATACOMM TERMINAL NOT IN REMOTE	Terminal remote switch not down.
00353	DATACOMM ERROR	Unspecific datacomm transmit or receive error.
00384	HP-IB HP-IB TIME-OUT	Data transfer didn't complete before allotted time.
00385	NO HP-IB PCA	No HP-IB PCA in terminal.
00386	ILLEGAL HP-IB ADDR	HP-IB address specified did not exist.
00387	HP-IB DEV BUSY, RETRY COMMAND WHEN FREE	Shared HP-IB device currently busy; wait until free.
00388	NO HP-IB CONTROLLER	No terminal on the HP-IB has responded to a request for control.
00389	HP-IB TEST FAIL xx	Self test of HP-IB failed.
00390	HP-IB TEST NOT ATTEMPTED, ADDR=x, SYSCTL=YES or NO, CIC=YES or NO	Self-test of HP-IB cannot be performed under current conditions or configuration.
00391	NOT HP-IB TALKER in BASIC.	Terminal not addressed to talk during a SENDBUS command
00392	NOT HP-IB SYSTEM CONTROLLER	HP-IB protocol violated; REN and IFC control lines may only be accessed by system controller.
00400	HPIB TE#x TO TE#y TEST FAIL	Transfer from terminal to terminal failed over HP-IB.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
01026	BASIC CHECKSUM ERROR IN BASIC	Something has caused the BASIC interpreter code to be altered. Reload the BASIC interpreter.
01027	NEXT WITHOUT FOR	A NEXT statement is encountered and the corresponding FOR statement is missing or some intervening loop used the same loop variable. Add the appropriate FOR statement or change the loop variable in the intervening loop.
01028	LOOP VARIABLE CAN'T BE LONG	A FOR statement must specify a simple variable of type INTEGER or SHORT. Declare the loop variable to be of type INTEGER or SHORT.
01029	RETURN WITHOUT GOSUB	A RETURN statement is encountered and no GOSUB is currently active. Change the program to avoid accidentally falling into a subroutine or remove the offending RETURN.
01030	NO RETURN	The end of program text is encountered while executing a subroutine. Add a RETURN statement.
01031	RESUME WITHOUT ERROR	A RESUME statement is encountered while no error handling routine is being executed. Remove the RESUME statement.
01032	NO RESUME	The end of program text is encountered while executing the error handling routine (see ON ERROR. Add a RESUME statement.
01033	SUB WITHOUT SUBEND	Two SUB statements exist with no intervening SUBEND statement; or a SUB statement exists with no SUBEND statement prior to the end of program text. Add an appropriate SUBEND statement.
01034	MISSING SUB	A SUBEND statement occurs prior to any SUB statement. Add the appropriate SUB statement.
01035	SUBPROGRAM NOT FOUND	A subprogram is referenced in a CALL statement but no corresponding SUB statement is found. Change the CALL or supply the subprogram text.
01036	MISMATCHED QUOTES	A statement or input response or data record for READ # contains a quoted string which is not enclosed in matched quotes. Re-enter the statement or input response; or correct the data record.
01037	MISMATCHED ELSE	More ELSE's occur in a statement than IF . . . THEN's. Correct the program logic.
01038	SYNTAX ERROR	The statement syntax does not match the program text. Typically, the error occurs because a keyword is misspelled, a comma (or some other punctuation) is inappropriately used or omitted, parentheses are mismatched in an expression, a function call contains extra parameters, etc. Check the manual for the specific syntax for the statement.
01039	MISSING OPERAND	A function or subprogram call requires more parameters; or an expression terminates with an operator; or a READ # statement has no semicolon and/or variable list; or a PRINT # statement has a semicolon and no print list. Correct the syntax in the statement with the error.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
01040	NUMERIC OVERFLOW	A hex or octal constant exceeds the integer value range; or the results of an arithmetic calculation exceed the allowed value range. Correct the hex or octal constant; or change the program logic to prevent exceeding the appropriate value range.
01041	DIVISION BY ZERO	A division operation has a zero divisor. Change program logic to prevent zero divisors.
01042	UNDEFINED LINE NUMBER	A RESTORE, GOTO, GOSUB, or RESUME statement references a line number which does not exist in the current program unit. The GOTO or GOSUB may be invoked by the ON END, ON ERROR or ON KEY statements. Supply the missing line number or correct an erroneous line number specification.
01043	LINE ALREADY EXISTS	The AUTO command is attempting to overwrite a program line which already exists. Specify the AUTO command so that it does not overwrite already existent program text, or delete the program lines which would be overwritten prior to initiating the AUTO command.
01044	STATEMENT MUST HAVE LINE	A statement which can be executed only as part of a program has been attempted as an unnumbered command. Execute that statement only as part of a program.
01045	STATEMENT MUST BE DIRECT	Execution of a command which is disallowed in a program has been attempted. Remove the command from the program text.
01046	SUBSCRIPT OUT OF RANGE	A subscript value exceeds the limits of an array dimension (which were established upon first reference to that array). Explicitly declare the array with appropriate dimensions, or change the array declaration, or change program logic to avoid exceeding the dimension limits.
01047	DIMENSION MISMATCH	The number of dimensions in an array reference does not match the number of dimensions specified in the first reference to that array; or the number of dimensions in an array passed to a subprogram as an actual parameter does not match the number of dimensions for the corresponding formal parameter. Change any array references which specify an incorrect number of dimensions.
01048	REDECLARED VARIABLE	A declaration statement (DIM, INTEGER, SHORT or LONG) is executed more than once; or a variable occurs in more than one declaration statement. Change program logic to avoid executing declaration statements more than once; or remove extraneous declarations or a variable.
01049	TYPE MISMATCH	An attempt is made to assign a string value to a numeric variable or a numeric value to a string variable; or the value or variable passed to a function or subprogram is not of the required type. Change the variable specification; or change the program to pass the correct type of value or variable to a function or subprogram.
01050	STRING TOO LONG	A string expression results in a string longer than 255 characters. Change program logic.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
01051	STRING FORMULA TOO COMPLEX	The evaluation of a string expression requires more intermediate results than the BASIC Interpreter allows. Break the string expression evaluation down so that you provide your own intermediate results.
01052	NONCONTIGUOUS STRING	The character position preceding a substring (to which a value is being assigned by a LET statement or a function) is undefined. Prevent assignments to substrings which are not immediately preceded by defined characters.
01053	SUBSTRING DESIGNATOR ERROR	The last character position in a substring specification precedes the first character position; or the last character position in a substring specification exceeds 255. Change the substring specification.
01054	VALUE OUT OF RANGE	A value specified for a command or function parameter lies outside the permitted range, or an octal constant digit is greater than 7. The value may be a line number, a specific type of character (e.g., letter as versus punctuation mark), an integer (frequently positive and less than 256), have a required relationship to another value, etc. For example, the NUM function returns this error if the string argument is null; and the DELETE command returns this error if the last line in the line number range precedes the first line number. Correct the command or function parameter.
01055	VARIABLE/NAME REQUIRED	The syntax requires a variable name (as versus a constant) in a function call; or a statement must start with a variable name if it does not start with some recognized statement initiator (i.e., an implied LET statement is the default statement type); or a subprogram name must follow CALL or SUB. Change the statement to provide variable or subprogram names as required.
01056	FUNCTION USAGE ERROR	A function invocation occurs in a disallowed context; eg., as the first action in a statement, or a cursor movement function in a PRINT # statement, or a GETKBD function call prior to executing GETKBD ON. See the manual for the proper context for the function usage and correct the context.
01057	BUFFER NOT AVAILABLE	Two different files are being accessed by READ # or ENTER statements which have not used all the contents of the last record read for each file and an attempt is made to access a third file through a READ # or ENTER statement. Restructure the file contents of the input files or change the program so that no more than two input files are actively using buffers at the same time.
01058	BUFFER OVERFLOW	The maximum record size of 255 characters in a PRINT # statement was exceeded. Change program logic to prevent records containing more than 255 characters.
01059	LOADER FORMAT ERROR	A record which is supposed to be in the format for the terminal's binary loader fails to match that format. Recreate the file in the binary loader format.
01060	UNASSIGNED/DISALLOWED FILE NUMBER	A READ #, LINPUT #, or PRINT # statement is attempted for a file which has not been specified in an ASSIGN statement; or the file number in an ASSIGN statement is less than 1 or greater than 255. Add an ASSIGN statement for the file number; or change the file number.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
01061	DATA INPUT MISSING	A READ, READ # or ENTER statement encounters consecutive commas in the DATA statement or the input data or the DATA statement or input data record ends with a comma. Correct the DATA statement or the input data record so that they do not end in commas and that consecutive commas do not occur.
01062	DATA ERROR	The data in a DATA statement or in an input buffer does not match the requirements of an item in the read list of a READ, READ #, or ENTER statement. Change the data or change the read list so that the data requirements match.
01063	OUT OF DATA	A READ is executed and all DATA statements have already been used; or a READ # statement is executed and end of file is encountered for a file for which no ON END statement was executed in the current program unit. Supply the appropriate DATA or ON END statement.
01064	OUT OF MEMORY	Insufficient memory exists to store the program text and all variables. Use SET SIZE to obtain more BASIC workspace or shorten the program or change the program structure to require less variable storage.
01065	FORMAT ERROR	A format specification is non-existent, or an edit symbol is undefined, or a simple replicator is used with an invalid edit symbol, or a simple replicator exceeds 255, or parentheses are mismatched, or parentheses contain no edit symbols, or a disallowed combination of edit symbols is used for one print list item. Check the edit symbol specifications in the manual and correct any misuses.
01066	NOT IN PROGRAM BREAK	GO is attempted when program execution was not halted by a STOP statement or a CONTROL break (default CONTROL-A) or when the program text was altered after being halted by a STOP statement or a CONTROL break. Restart the program.
01067	MULTIPLE STATEMENTS DISALLOWED	The initial entry (ie., not through GET or MERGE) of a line containing multiple statements is attempted after the SET SINGLE command has disallowed multiple statements per line. Enter the line as separate lines or specify SET MULTIPLE.
01068	FEATURE NOT PRESENT	A statement, command, or function is referenced and the current version of BASIC does not support that operation. This may occur when trying to run a program which was saved by one version of BASIC (eg., a version of BASIC for which REMOVE STDX has not been specified) with a different version of BASIC (eg., a version of BASIC for which REMOVE STDX has been specified) which does not support the statement, command, or function referenced. Load the appropriate version of BASIC prior to loading and/or executing any BASIC operations.
01069	NO MESSAGE FOR ERROR CODE	The error message routine is invoked (probably by the ERROR statement) and no error message text exists for the specified error code. Issue the direct statement PRINT ERRN, ERRL to determine which error code and program line caused this error message to be displayed. Add custom error message text to the ERROR statement or change the error code which is specified.

Table E-1. Terminal Error Codes (Continued)

CODE	MESSAGE	EXPLANATION
1070	NESTING EXCEEDS LIMIT	More than 255 levels of subprograms are currently active.
1071	NOT ALLOWED W/SECURE PGM	Secured programs cannot be listed or saved without the SECURE option.
01281	AGL AGL ERROR 1281	Syntax error.
01282	AGL ERROR 1282	Too many parameters.
01283	AGL ERROR 1283	Cannot default parameter.
01284	AGL ERROR 1284	Driver not present.
01285	AGL ERROR 1285	Parameter out of range.
01286	AGL ERROR 1286	Illegal action request.
01287	AGL ERROR 1287	Cannot open new device without closing old device.
01288	AGL ERROR 1288	No devices on.
01289	AGL ERROR 1289	Wrong number of parameters.
01290	AGL ERROR 1290	Null area specified.
01291	AGL ERROR 1291	Scaling values are equal.
01292	2647 DRIVER ERROR 1292	Attempt to plot beyond limits of logical address space.
01293	PLOTTER PLOTTER DRIVER ERROR 1293	Instruction not recognized.
01294	PLOTTER DRIVER ERROR 1294	Wrong number of parameters.
01295	PLOTTER DRIVER ERROR 1295	Bad parameter.
01296	PLOTTER DRIVER ERROR 1296	Illegal character.
01297 (0511)	PLOTTER DRIVERERROR 1297	Unknown character set.
01298	PLOTTER DRIVER ERROR 1298	Position overflow.

INDEX

ABS(X)	3-4,12-16	CSAVE	12-1
absolute sensing	10-2	CSENA(R,C)	10-2
adding statements	1-3	CSENS(R,C)	10-2,12-16
AGL	11-1	CSIZE	11-20
AGL functions	11-7	CURSOR	11-24
AGL terminology	11-2	cursor positioning	10-2
AGL, definition of	11-1	cursor positioning, absolute	10-2
AND	3-3	cursor positioning, relative	10-2
arithmetic operator hierarchy	B-1	cursor positioning, screen relative	10-2
arithmetic operators	3-1	cursor sensing	10-1
array functions	6-4	cursor sensing, absolute	10-2
arrays	2-6, 6-1	cursor sensing, screen relative	10-2
arrays, dimensioning	6-1		
arrays, entering data into	6-2		
arrays, inverting	6-4	DATA	1-9
arrays, printing	6-3	data	2-1
arrays, setting to an identity array	6-4	DATA	4-4,12-6
arrays, setting to zero or constant	6-4	data communications	10-9
arrays, transposing	6-4	data type, default	B-1
arrays, using	6-2	data, numeric	2-1
ASCII (7-bit) Character Codes table	A-2	data, string	2-1
ASCII Character Set table	A-1	default data type	B-1
ASCII characters, list of	2-1	DELETE	1-3,12-1
ASSIGN	9-3, 9-1,12-5	deleting lines	
ATN(X)	3-4,12-17	digit separators	5-3
AUTO	12-1	digit symbols	5-3
AXES	11-16	DIGITIZE	11-25
BASIC commands and statements, summary of	D-1	DIM	1-3, 2-5, 6-1, 12-6
BASIC statements, summary of	1-10	dimensioning arrays	6-1
BASIC syntax	12-1	direct computation	1-9
BASIC workspace	1-3	display input conditions	10-4
BASIC, exiting	1-9	display operations	10-1
BASIC, how to load	1-2	DIV	3-2
BASIC, how to use	1-1	DRAW	11-23
BASIC, suspending	10-13	DSIZE	11-26
BASIC, what is	1-1	DSPIN\$(L,X)	12-18
byte transfers	10-9	DSPIN(L,X)	10-2
CALL	1-9, 8-1,12-6	DSTAT	11-26
carriage control	5-5		
character codes	10-8		
CHR\$(X)	3-5,12-17	E-Notation	2-3
CLIP	11-13	editing programs	1-7
CLIPOFF/CLIPON	11-13	END	4-15,12-6
clipping	11-4	entering programs	1-5
CMP	3-4	entering programs from cartridge tape	1-5
codes, character and key	10-8	equality, relational tests for	4-2
codes, error	E-1	ERRL	10-11,12-18
COMMAND	10-11,12-6	ERRN	10-11,12-18
commands	1-2	ERROR	12-7
compacted formatting	5-4	error codes	E-1
compatibility	B-1	error handling	10-11
computation, direct	1-9	error messages	E-1
constants	2-1	execute file, using	1-7
COS(X)	3-4,12-17	EXIT	1-7,12-1
		exiting BASIC	1-9
		EXP(X)	3-4,12-16

field overflow	5-5
file error variables	9-3
files	2-6, 9-1
files, closing	9-3
files, equating to printers and terminals	9-3
files, referencing in subprograms	8-6
floating specifiers	5-4
FOR	1-9, 4-10
FOR .. NEXT	12-7
FOR .. NEXT loops	B-1
FOR loop cautions	4-12
format replication	5-4
format string, reusing	5-5
format symbols	5-2
formatted output	5-1
formatted output to devices	9-3
formatting numbers	5-3
formatting strings	5-3
formatting, compacted	5-4
FRAME	11-18
FRE	10-11,12-18
functions	3-4
functions, built-in	12-16
functions, user-defined	B-1
FXD	11-19
 GCLR	11-10
GDU	11-2
GET	1-4,12-2
GETDCM ON/OFF	10-9,12-7
GETDCM(S\$)	12-18
GETKBD ON/OFF	10-5,12-7
GETKBD(X)	10-5,12-18
GO	1-9,12-2
GOSUB	1-9, 4-13,12-7
GOTO	1-9, 4-9,12-8
GPMM	11-26
GPON	11-8
graph limits (P1,P2)	11-2
graphic display space	11-2
graphic display units (GDU's)	11-6
GRID	11-18
GSTAT	11-26
 hard clip limits (H1,H2)	11-4
hexidecimal data	2-3
hierarchy of operations	2-4
 IF .. THEN .. ELSE	4-9,12-8
IMAGE	1-9, 5-1,12-8
INPUT	4-3,12-8
input from keyboard, acting on	10-5
input/output functions	12-18
inputting data directly from screen	10-2
INT(X)	3-4, 3-2,12-17
INTEGER	12-8
integers	2-2
interrupting on specific keys	10-5
IPILOT	11-23
 key codes	10-8
key functions, processing	10-6
 key interrupts, disabling	10-5
key numbers	10-8
keyboard codes, default	12-9
keyboard input and control	10-4
keyboard input, acting on	10-5
keyboard layout with keynumbers	12-8
keyboard, reconfiguring	1-11
keyboard, redefining	10-4
keyboard, redefining of	10-7
KEYCDE	12-9
KEYCDE(X,N,C)	10-7
 LAXES	11-17
LDIR	11-20
LEN(S\$)	3-5,12-17
LET	4-1,12-10
LGRID	11-18
LIMIT	11-9
LIN(N)	12-18
LIN(X)	4-8
LINE	11-22
LINPUT	4-4,12-10
LINPUT #	9-2,12-10
LIST	1-3,12-2
literal specifications	5-2
loading programs using the READ key	1-6
LOCATE	11-10
LOG(X)	3-4,12-17
logical address space	11-2
logical address space (A1,A2)	11-2
logical operators	3-3
logical values	2-6
LONG	12-10
long values	2-2
LONG(X)	3-4,12-17
LORG	11-19
LXAXIS	11-15
LYAXIS	11-16
 MARGIN	11-11
mechanical limits (M1,M2)	11-2
MERGE	1-4,12-2
messages, error	E-1
metric units	11-6
MOD	3-2
MOVCA(R,C)	10-2,12-18
MOVCR(R,C)	10-2,12-18
MOVCS(R,C)	10-2,12-18
MOVE	11-23
MSCALE	11-13
multiple assignment	4-2
multiple loops	4-11
multiple statements	1-5
 nesting, in-line subroutine	4-14
NEXT	1-9, 4-10,12-11
NOT	3-3
NUM(S\$)	3-5,12-17
numeric data	2-2, 2-1
numeric functions	3-4,12-16
numeric variables	2-4

octal data 2-3
OFF KEY # 12-11
ON 1-9
ON..GOSUB 4-14,12-11
ON..GOTO 4-9,12-11
ON END # 9-2,12-11
ON ERROR 10-11,12-12
ON KEY # 10-5,12-12
 operators 3-1
 operators, arithmetic 3-1
 operators, logical 3-3
 operators, relational 3-2
 operators, string 3-2
OPTION BASE B-1
OR 3-3
OUT OF MEMORY 1-3

 parameters, passing of 8-5
 pass-by-reference 8-3
 pass-by-value 8-3
 passing parameters 8-5
PDIR 11-24
PEN 11-21
PENUP/PENDN 11-21
PLOT 11-22
PLOTR 11-8
POINT 11-24
PORG 11-24
POS(S1\$,S2\$) 3-5,12-17
PRINT 4-6,12-12
PRINT # 9-3, 9-1,12-13
PRINT # USING 9-3
PRINT #0 11-23
 print functions 4-8,12-18
PRINT USING 5-1,12-13
PROC\$(X) 10-6,12-18
 program control 10-11
 programming considerations 5-5
 programs, editing 1-7
 programs, entering from the computer 1-6
 programs, loading 1-6
 programs, loading from cartridge tape 1-5
 programs, running 1-7
 programs, sample session 1-8
 programs, saving 1-7
PUTDCM 10-9
PUTDCM(\$) 12-18

 radix symbols 5-3
 random numbers 3-5
RANDOMIZE B-1
READ 1-9, 4-4,12-14
READ # 9-2,12-14
REDECLARED VARIABLE error 2-5
 region of interest (viewport) (V1,V2) 11-3
 regions 11-2
 relational operators 3-2
 relational tests for equality 4-2
REM 4-1
REMARK 12-14
 remote operation 1-8
REMOVE 10-11,12-3
RENUM 1-3,12-3

reserved words B-1, C-1
RESET, full 1-9
RESET, soft 1-9
RESTORE 1-9, 4-5,12-14
RESTORE # 9-2,12-14
RESUME 1-9,10-12,12-14
RETURN 1-9, 4-13,12-15
RND S 12-17
RPLOT 11-23
RPT\$(S\$,X) 12-17
RUN 12-4
 running programs 1-7

 sample program session 1-8
SAVE 1-4,12-4
 saving programs 1-7
SCALE 11-12
SCRATCH 1-4,12-4
 screen relative sensing 10-2
 sensing, absolute 10-2
 separators, print specifications 5-2
SET 12-4
SETAR 11-9
SETGU/SETUU 11-13
SGN(X) 3-4,12-17
SHORT 12-15
 short values 2-2
SHORT(X) 3-4,12-17
SHOW 11-11
 sign symbols 5-4
SIN(X) 3-4,12-17
SLEEP 10-9,10-13,12-15
 soft clip limits (S1,S2) 11-5
SPA(N) 12-18
SPA(X) 4-8
SQR(X) 3-4,12-17
 statements 1-2, 4-1
 statements, summary of 1-10
 status, graphics device 11-26
STOP 1-9, 4-15,12-15
 string data 2-3, 2-1
 string functions 3-5,12-17
 string operators 3-2
 string variables 2-5
 strings 7-1
SUB 1-9, 8-1,12-16
SUBEND 1-9, 8-1,12-16
 subprograms 8-1
 subscripted variables 2-6
 substrings 7-1
 substrings as array elements 6-4
SUSPEND 1-7
 syntax, BASIC 12-1

TAB(N) 12-18
TAB(X) 4-8
TAN(X) 3-4,12-17
 terminal display codes 10-2
 terminal operations 10-1
 tests for equality 4-2
 trigonometric functions 12-17
TRIM\$(S\$) 3-5,12-18
 Type Declaration Statements 2-4

unit systems, AGL	11-5
UPC\$(S\$)	3-5,12-18
user defined units (UDU's)	11-5
user-defined functions	B-1
VAL\$(X)	3-5,12-17
VAL(S\$)	3-5,12-17
variables	2-3
variables, local	8-4
variables, losing	1-9
variables, numeric	2-4
variables, string	2-5
variables, subscripted	2-6
WAKEUP	1-9,10-13,12-16
WHERE	11-24
workspace	1-3
XAXIS	11-14
XOR	3-4
YAXIS	11-15


```
10
20 SHOR 12.75
25 SETAR 12.75
30 LOCATE (0,12.75
40 SCALE (0,12.75
50 MOVE (0,.375)
60 PRINT "TOP Y"
70 INPUT TS
80 PRINT "BACK Y"
90 INPUT KS
100 FOR I=1
110 READ X
120 READ Y
130 PLUT (
140 REM a
150 DATA
160 DATA
170 DATA
180 DATA
190 NF
194 Y
195
200
210
220
230
```